

Babel

Version 3.17.1171

2018/01/29

Original author

Johannes L. Braams

Current maintainer

Javier Bezos

The standard distribution of \LaTeX contains a number of document classes that are meant to be used, but also serve as examples for other users to create their own document classes. These document classes have become very popular among \LaTeX users. But it should be kept in mind that they were designed for American tastes and typography. At one time they even contained a number of hard-wired texts.

This manual describes babel, a package that makes use of the capabilities of \TeX version 3 and, to some extent, xetex and luatex, to provide an environment in which documents can be typeset in a language other than US English, or in more than one language or script.

Current development is focused on Unicode engines (Xe \TeX and Lua \TeX) and the so-called *complex scripts*. New features related to font selection, bidi writing and the like will be added incrementally.

Babel provides support (total or partial) for about 200 languages, either as a “classical” package option or as an ini file. Furthermore, new languages can be created from scratch easily.

Contents

I	User guide	4
1	The user interface	4
1.1	Monolingual documents	4
1.2	Multilingual documents	5
1.3	Modifiers	6
1.4	xelatex and lualatex	6
1.5	Troubleshooting	7
1.6	Plain	8
1.7	Basic language selectors	8
1.8	Auxiliary language selectors	9
1.9	More on selection	9
1.10	Shorthands	10
1.11	Package options	14
1.12	The base option	16
1.13	ini files	16
1.14	Selecting fonts	22
1.15	Modifying a language	24
1.16	Creating a language	24
1.17	Getting the current language name	26
1.18	Hyphenation tools	27
1.19	Selecting scripts	28
1.20	Selecting directions	29
1.21	Language attributes	31
1.22	Hooks	31
1.23	Languages supported by babel	32
1.24	Tips, workarounds, know issues and notes	33
1.25	Current and future work	35
1.26	Tentative and experimental code	36
2	Loading languages with language.dat	36
2.1	Format	37
3	The interface between the core of babel and the language definition files	37
3.1	Guidelines for contributed languages	39
3.2	Basic macros	39
3.3	Skeleton	40
3.4	Support for active characters	41
3.5	Support for saving macro definitions	41
3.6	Support for extending macros	42
3.7	Macros common to a number of languages	42
3.8	Encoding-dependent strings	42
4	Changes	46
4.1	Changes in babel version 3.9	46
4.2	Changes in babel version 3.7	47
II	The code	47
5	Identification and loading of required files	47

6	Tools	48
6.1	Multiple languages	51
7	The Package File (\LaTeX, babel.sty)	52
7.1	base	52
7.2	key=value options and other general option	54
7.3	Conditional loading of shorthands	55
7.4	Language options	57
8	The kernel of Babel (babel.def, common)	59
8.1	Tools	59
8.2	Hooks	62
8.3	Setting up language files	64
8.4	Shorthands	66
8.5	Language attributes	75
8.6	Support for saving macro definitions	77
8.7	Short tags	78
8.8	Hyphens	78
8.9	Multiencoding strings	80
8.10	Macros common to a number of languages	86
8.11	Making glyphs available	86
8.11.1	Quotation marks	86
8.11.2	Letters	87
8.11.3	Shorthands for quotation marks	88
8.11.4	Umlauts and tremas	89
8.12	Layout	90
8.13	Creating languages	91
9	The kernel of Babel (babel.def, only \LaTeX)	97
9.1	The redefinition of the style commands	97
9.2	Cross referencing macros	97
9.3	Marks	101
9.4	Preventing clashes with other packages	102
9.4.1	ifthen	102
9.4.2	varioref	102
9.4.3	hhline	103
9.4.4	hyperref	103
9.4.5	fancyhdr	104
9.5	Encoding and fonts	104
9.6	Basic bidi support	106
9.7	Local Language Configuration	108
10	Multiple languages (switch.def)	109
10.1	Selecting the language	110
10.2	Errors	117
11	Loading hyphenation patterns	119
12	Font handling with fontspec	124
13	Hooks for XeTeX and LuaTeX	127
13.1	XeTeX	127
13.2	Layout	129
13.3	LuaTeX	132
13.4	Layout	137
13.5	Auto bidi with basic-r	139

14	The ‘nil’ language	143
15	Support for Plain T_EX (plain.def)	143
15.1	Not renaming hyphen.tex	143
15.2	Emulating some L ^A T _E X features	144
15.3	General tools	145
15.4	Encoding related macros	148
16	Acknowledgements	151

Part I

User guide

- This user guide focuses on \LaTeX . There are also some notes on its use with Plain \TeX .
- Changes and new features with relation to version 3.8 are highlighted with **New X.XX**. The most recent features could be still unstable. Please, report any issues you find.
- If you are interested in the \TeX multilingual support, please join the kadingira list on <http://tug.org/mailman/listinfo/kadingira>. You can follow the development of babel on <https://github.com/latex3/latex2e/tree/master/required/babel> (which provides some sample files, too).
- See section 3.1 for contributing a language.

1 The user interface

1.1 Monolingual documents

In most cases, a single language is required, and then all you need in \LaTeX is to load the package using its standard mechanism for this purpose, namely, passing that language as an optional argument. In addition, you may want to set the font and input encodings.

EXAMPLE Here is a simple full example for “traditional” \TeX engines (see below for xetex and luatex). The packages fontenc and inputenc do not belong to babel, but they are included in the example because typically you will need them:

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
\usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}

\usepackage[french]{babel}

\begin{document}

Plus ça change, plus c'est la même chose!

\end{document}
```

WARNING A common source of trouble is a wrong setting of the input encoding. Make sure you set the encoding actually used by your editor.

Another approach is making the language (french in the example) a global option in order to let other packages detect and use it:

```
\documentclass[french]{article}
\usepackage{babel}
\usepackage{varioref}
```

In this last example, the package `varioref` will also see the option and will be able to use it.

NOTE Because of the way babel has evolved, “language” can refer to (1) a set of hyphenation patterns as preloaded into the format, (2) a package option, (3) an ldf file, and (4) a name used in the document to select a language or dialect. So, a package option refers to a language in a generic way – sometimes it is the actual language name used to select it, sometimes it is a file name loading a language with a different name, sometimes it is a file name loading several languages. Please, read the documentation for specific languages for further info.

1.2 Multilingual documents

In multilingual documents, just use several options. The last one is considered the main language, activated by default. Sometimes, the main language changes the document layout (eg, spanish and french).

EXAMPLE In \LaTeX , the preamble of the document:

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage[dutch,english]{babel}
```

would tell \LaTeX that the document would be written in two languages, Dutch and English, and that English would be the first language in use, and the main one.

You can also set the main language explicitly:

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage[main=english,dutch]{babel}
```

WARNING Languages may be set as global and as package option at the same time, but in such a case you should set explicitly the main language with the package option main:

```
\documentclass[italian]{book}
\usepackage[ngerman,main=italian]{babel}
```

WARNING In the preamble the main language has *not* been selected, except hyphenation patterns and the name assigned to `\language` (in particular, shorthands, captions and date are not activated). If you need to define boxes and the like in the preamble, you might want to use some of the language selectors described below.

To switch the language there are two basic macros, described below in detail: `\selectlanguage` is used for blocks of text, while `\foreignlanguage` is for chunks of text inside paragraphs.

EXAMPLE A full bilingual document follows. The main language is french, which is activated when the document begins.

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
\usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}

\usepackage[english,french]{babel}
```

```

\begin{document}

Plus ça change, plus c'est la même chose!

\selectlanguage{english}

And an English paragraph, with a short text in
\foreignlanguage{french}{français}.

\end{document}

```

1.3 Modifiers

New 3.9c The basic behaviour of some languages can be modified when loading babel by means of *modifiers*. They are set after the language name, and are prefixed with a dot (only when the language is set as package option – neither global options nor the main key accept them). An example is (spaces are not significant and they can be added or removed):¹

```

\usepackage[latin.medieval, spanish.notilde.lcroman, danish]{babel}

```

Attributes (described below) are considered modifiers, ie, you can set an attribute by including it in the list of modifiers. However, modifiers is a more general mechanism.

1.4 xelatex and lualatex

Many languages are compatible with xetex and luatex. With them you can use babel to localize the documents.

The Latin script is covered by default in current L^AT_EX (provided the document encoding is UTF-8), because the font loader is preloaded and the font is switched to `lmroman`. Other scripts require loading `fontspec`. You may want to set the font attributes with `fontspec`, too.

EXAMPLE The following bilingual, single script document in UTF-8 encoding just prints a couple of ‘captions’ and `\today` in Danish and Vietnamese. No additional packages are required.

```

\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[vietnamese,danish]{babel}

\begin{document}

\prefacename{} -- \alsoname{} -- \today

\selectlanguage{vietnamese}

\prefacename{} -- \alsoname{} -- \today

\end{document}

```

EXAMPLE Here is a simple monolingual document in Russian (text from the Wikipedia). Note neither `fontenc` nor `inputenc` are necessary, but the document should be encoded

¹No predefined “axis” for modifiers are provided because languages and their scripts have quite different needs.

in UTF-8 and a so-called Unicode font must be loaded (in this example `\babelfont` is used, described below).

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[russian]{babel}

\babelfont{rm}{DejaVu Serif}

\begin{document}

Россия, находящаяся на пересечении множества культур, а также
с учётом многонационального характера её населения, – отличается
высокой степенью этнокультурного многообразия и способностью к
межкультурному диалогу.

\end{document}
```

1.5 Troubleshooting

- Loading directly sty files in \LaTeX (ie, `\usepackage{<language>}`) is deprecated and you will get the error:²

```
! Package babel Error: You are loading directly a language style.
(babel)                This syntax is deprecated and you must use
(babel)                \usepackage[language]{babel}.
```

- Another typical error when using babel is the following:³

```
! Package babel Error: Unknown language `LANG'. Either you have misspelled
(babel)                its name, it has not been installed, or you requested
(babel)                it in a previous run. Fix its name, install it or just
(babel)                rerun the file, respectively
```

The most frequent reason is, by far, the latest (for example, you included spanish, but you realized this language is not used after all, and therefore you removed it from the option list). In most cases, the error vanishes when the document is typeset again, but in more severe ones you will need to remove the aux file.

- The following warning is about hyphenation patterns, which are not under the direct control of babel:

```
Package babel Warning: No hyphenation patterns were preloaded for
(babel)                the language `LANG' into the format.
(babel)                Please, configure your TeX system to add them and
(babel)                rebuild the format. Now I will use the patterns
(babel)                preloaded for \language=0 instead on input line 57.
```

The document will be typeset, but very likely the text will not be correctly hyphenated. Some languages may be raising this warning wrongly (because they are not hyphenated); it is a bug to be fixed – just ignore it. See the manual of your distribution (Mac \TeX , Mik \TeX , \TeX Live, etc.) for further info about how to configure it.

²In old versions the error read “You have used an old interface to call babel”, not very helpful.

³In old versions the error read “You haven’t loaded the language LANG yet”.

1.6 Plain

In Plain, load languages styles with `\input` and then use `\begindocument` (the latter is defined by babel):

```
\input estonian.sty
\begindocument
```

WARNING Not all languages provide a `sty` file and some of them are not compatible with Plain.⁴

1.7 Basic language selectors

This section describes the commands to be used in the document to switch the language in multilingual documents. In most cases, only the two basic macros `\selectlanguage` and `\foreignlanguage` are necessary. The environments `otherlanguage`, `otherlanguage*` and `hyphenrules` are auxiliary, and described in the next section.

The main language is selected automatically when the document environment begins.

`\selectlanguage` $\{\langle language \rangle\}$

When a user wants to switch from one language to another he can do so using the macro `\selectlanguage`. This macro takes the language, defined previously by a language definition file, as its argument. It calls several macros that should be defined in the language definition files to activate the special definitions for the language chosen:

```
\selectlanguage{german}
```

This command can be used as environment, too.

NOTE For “historical reasons”, a macro name is converted to a language name without the leading `\`; in other words, `\selectlanguage{\german}` is equivalent to `\selectlanguage{german}`. Using a macro instead of a “real” name is deprecated.

WARNING If used inside braces there might be some non-local changes, as this would be roughly equivalent to:

```
{\selectlanguage{<inner-language>} ...}\selectlanguage{<outer-language>}
```

If you want a change which is really local, you must enclose this code with an additional grouping level.

`\foreignlanguage` $\{\langle language \rangle\}\{\langle text \rangle\}$

The command `\foreignlanguage` takes two arguments; the second argument is a phrase to be typeset according to the rules of the language named in its first one. This command (1) only switches the extra definitions and the hyphenation rules for the language, *not* the names and dates, (2) does not send information about the language to auxiliary files (i.e., the surrounding language is still in force), and (3) it works even if the language has not been set as package option (but in such a case it only sets the hyphenation patterns and a warning is shown).

⁴Even in the babel kernel there were some macros not compatible with plain. Hopefully these issues will be fixed soon.

1.8 Auxiliary language selectors

`\begin{otherlanguage}` $\langle\text{language}\rangle$... `\end{otherlanguage}`

The environment `otherlanguage` does basically the same as `\selectlanguage`, except the language change is (mostly) local to the environment.

Actually, there might be some non-local changes, as this environment is roughly equivalent to:

```
\begingroup
\selectlanguage{<inner-language>}
...
\endgroup
\selectlanguage{<outer-language>}
```

If you want a change which is really local, you must enclose this environment with an additional grouping, like braces `{}`.

Spaces after the environment are ignored.

`\begin{otherlanguage*}` $\langle\text{language}\rangle$... `\end{otherlanguage*}`

Same as `\foreignlanguage` but as environment. Spaces after the environment are *not* ignored.

This environment was originally intended for intermixing left-to-right typesetting with right-to-left typesetting in engines not supporting a change in the writing direction inside a line. However, by default it never complied with the documented behaviour and it is just a version as environment of `\foreignlanguage`.

`\begin{hyphenrules}` $\langle\text{language}\rangle$... `\end{hyphenrules}`

The environment `hyphenrules` can be used to select *only* the hyphenation rules to be used (it can be used as command, too). This can for instance be used to select ‘nohyphenation’, provided that in `language.dat` the ‘language’ nohyphenation is defined by loading `zerohyph.tex`. It deactivates language shorthands, too (but not user shorthands). Except for these simple uses, `hyphenrules` is discouraged and `otherlanguage*` (the starred version) is preferred, as the former does not take into account possible changes in encodings of characters like, say, ‘ done by some languages (eg, italian, french, ukraineb). To set hyphenation exceptions, use `\babelhyphenation` (see below).

1.9 More on selection

`\babeltags` $\langle\text{tag1}\rangle = \langle\text{language1}\rangle, \langle\text{tag2}\rangle = \langle\text{language2}\rangle, \dots$

New 3.9i In multilingual documents with many language switches the commands above can be cumbersome. With this tool shorter names can be defined. It adds nothing really new – it is just syntactical sugar.

It defines `\text{<tag1>}{<text>}` to be `\foreignlanguage{<language1>}{<text>}`, and `\begin{<tag1>}` to be `\begin{otherlanguage*}{<language1>}`, and so on. Note `\langle\text{tag1}\rangle` is also allowed, but remember to set it locally inside a group.

EXAMPLE With

```
\babeltags{de = german}
```

you can write

```
text \textde{German text} text
```

and

```
text
\begin{de}
  German text
\end{de}
text
```

NOTE Something like `\babeltags{finnish = finnish}` is legitimate – it defines `\textfinnish` and `\finnish` (and, of course, `\begin{finnish}`).

NOTE Actually, there may be another advantage in the ‘short’ syntax `\text{tag}`, namely, it is not affected by `\MakeUppercase` (while `\foreignlanguage` is).

\babelensure `[include=<commands>, exclude=<commands>, fontenc=<encoding>]{<language>}`

New 3.9i Except in a few languages, like russian, captions and dates are just strings, and do not switch the language. That means you should set it explicitly if you want to use them, or hyphenation (and in some cases the text itself) will be wrong. For example:

```
\foreignlanguage{russian}{text \foreignlanguage{polish}{\seename} text}
```

Of course, $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ can do it for you. To avoid switching the language all the while, `\babelensure` redefines the captions for a given language to wrap them with a selector:

```
\babelensure{polish}
```

By default only the basic captions and `\today` are redefined, but you can add further macros with the key `include` in the optional argument (without commas). Macros not to be modified are listed in `exclude`. You can also enforce a font encoding with `fontenc`.⁵ A couple of examples:

```
\babelensure[include=\Today]{spanish}
\babelensure[fontenc=T5]{vietnamese}
```

They are activated when the language is selected (at the `afterextras` event), and it makes some assumptions which could not be fulfilled in some languages. Note also you should include only macros defined by the language, not global macros (eg, `\TeX` or `\dag`). With `ini` files (see below), captions are ensured by default.

1.10 Shorthands

A *shorthand* is a sequence of one or two characters that expands to arbitrary $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ code. Shorthands can be used for different kinds of things, as for example: (1) in some languages shorthands such as "a are defined to be able to hyphenate the word if the encoding is OT1;

⁵With it encoded string may not work as expected.

(2) in some languages shorthands such as ! are used to insert the right amount of white space; (3) several kinds of discretionary and breaks can be inserted easily with "-", "=", etc. The package inputenc as well as xetex and luatex have alleviated entering non-ASCII characters, but minority languages and some kinds of text can still require characters not directly available on the keyboards (and sometimes not even as separated or precomposed Unicode characters). As to the point 2, now pdfTeX provides \kernbcode, and luatex can manipulate the glyph list. Tools for point 3 can be still very useful in general. There are three levels of shorthands: *user*, *language*, and *system* (by order of precedence). Version 3.9 introduces the *language user* level on top of the user level, as described below. In most cases, you will use only shorthands provided by languages.

NOTE Note the following:

1. Activated chars used for two-char shorthands cannot be followed by a closing brace } and the spaces following are gobbled. With one-char shorthands (eg, :), they are preserved.
2. If on a certain level (system, language, user) there is a one-char shorthand, two-char ones starting with that char and on the same level are ignored.
3. Since they are active, a shorthand cannot contain the same character in its definition (except if it is deactivated with, eg, string).

A typical error when using shorthands is the following:

```
! Argument of \language@active@arg" has an extra }.
```

It means there is a closing brace just after a shorthand, which is not allowed (eg, "}). Just add {} after (eg, "{}}).

\shorthandon `{\shorthands-list}`
\shorthandoff `*{\shorthands-list}`

It is sometimes necessary to switch a shorthand character off temporarily, because it must be used in an entirely different way. For this purpose, the user commands \shorthandoff and \shorthandon are provided. They each take a list of characters as their arguments. The command \shorthandoff sets the \catcode for each of the characters in its argument to other (12); the command \shorthandon sets the \catcode to active (13). Both commands only work on ‘known’ shorthand characters. If a character is not known to be a shorthand character its category code will be left unchanged.

New 3.9a However, \shorthandoff does not behave as you would expect with characters like ~ or ^, because they usually are not “other”. For them \shorthandoff* is provided, so that with

```
\shorthandoff*{~^}
```

~ is still active, very likely with the meaning of a non-breaking space, and ^ is the superscript character. The catcodes used are those when the shorthands are defined, usually when language files are loaded.

`\useshortands` `*{\langle char \rangle}`

The command `\useshortands` initiates the definition of user-defined shorthand sequences. It has one argument, the character that starts these personal shorthands.

New 3.9a User shorthands are not always alive, as they may be deactivated by languages (for example, if you use " for your user shorthands and switch from german to french, they stop working). Therefore, a starred version `\useshortands*{\langle char \rangle}` is provided, which makes sure shorthands are always activated.

Currently, if the package option `shorthands` is used, you must include any character to be activated with `\useshortands`. This restriction will be lifted in a future release.

`\defineshortand` `[\langle language \rangle, \langle language \rangle, ...]{\langle shorthand \rangle}{\langle code \rangle}`

The command `\defineshortand` takes two arguments: the first is a one- or two-character shorthand sequence, and the second is the code the shorthand should expand to.

New 3.9a An optional argument allows to (re)define language and system shorthands (some languages do not activate shorthands, so you may want to add `\languageshortands{\langle lang \rangle}` to the corresponding `\extras{\langle lang \rangle}`, as explained below). By default, user shorthands are (re)defined.

User shorthands override language ones, which in turn override system shorthands.

Language-dependent user shorthands (new in 3.9) take precedence over “normal” user shorthands.

EXAMPLE Let’s assume you want a unified set of shorthand for dictionaries (languages do not define shorthands consistently, and “-”, “\”, “=” have different meanings). You could start with, say:

```
\useshortands*{"}
\defineshortand{"*}{\babelhyphen{soft}}
\defineshortand{"-}{\babelhyphen{hard}}
```

However, behaviour of hyphens is language dependent. For example, in languages like Polish and Portuguese, a hard hyphen inside compound words are repeated at the beginning of the next line. You could then set:

```
\defineshortand[*polish,*portugese]{"-}{\babelhyphen{repeat}}
```

Here, options with `*` set a language-dependent user shorthand, which means the generic one above only applies for the rest of languages; without `*` they would (re)define the language shorthands instead, which are overridden by user ones.

Now, you have a single unified shorthand (“-”), with a content-based meaning (‘compound word hyphen’) whose visual behavior is that expected in each context.

`\aliasshortand` `{\langle original \rangle}{\langle alias \rangle}`

The command `\aliasshortand` can be used to let another character perform the same functions as the default shorthand character. If one prefers for example to use the character / over “ in typing Polish texts, this can be achieved by entering `\aliasshortand{/}{/}`.

NOTE The substitute character must *not* have been declared before as shorthand (in such a case, `\aliasshortands` is ignored).

EXAMPLE The following example shows how to replace a shorthand by another

```
\aliasshorthand{~}{^}  
\AtBeginDocument{\shorthandoff*{~}}
```

WARNING Shorthands remember somehow the original character, and the fallback value is that of the latter. So, in this example, if no shorthand is found, ^ expands to a non-breaking space, because this is the value of ~ (internally, ^ still calls \active@char~ or \normal@char~). Furthermore, if you change the system value of ^ with \defineshorthand nothing happens.

\languageshorthands {<language>}

The command \languageshorthands can be used to switch the shorthands on the language level. It takes one argument, the name of a language or none (the latter does what its name suggests).⁶ Note that for this to work the language should have been specified as an option when loading the babel package. For example, you can use in english the shorthands defined by ngerman with

```
\addto\extrasenglish{\languageshorthands{ngerman}}
```

(You may also need to activate them with, for example, \usesshorthands.) Very often, this is a more convenient way to deactivate shorthands than \shorthandoff, as for example if you want to define a macro to easily type phonetic characters with tipa:

```
\newcommand{\myipa}[1]{\{\languageshorthands{none}\}\tipaencoding#1}}
```

\babelshorthand {<shorthand>}

With this command you can use a shorthand even if (1) not activated in shorthands (in this case only shorthands for the current language are taken into account, ie, not user shorthands), (2) turned off with \shorthandoff or (3) deactivated with the internal \bb1@deactivate; for example, \babelshorthand{"u} or \babelshorthand{:}. (You can conveniently define your own macros, or even your own user shorthands provided they do not overlap.)

For your records, here is a list of shorthands, but you must double check them, as they may change:⁷

Languages with no shorthands Croatian, English (any variety), Indonesian, Hebrew, Interlingua, Irish, Lower Sorbian, Malaysian, North Sami, Romanian, Scottish, Welsh
Languages with only " as defined shorthand character Albanian, Bulgarian, Danish, Dutch, Finnish, German (old and new orthography, also Austrian), Icelandic, Italian, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese (also Brazilian), Russian, Serbian (with Latin script), Slovene, Swedish, Ukrainian, Upper Sorbian

Basque " ' ~

Breton : ; ? !

Catalan " ' `

Czech " -

⁶Actually, any name not corresponding to a language group does the same as none. However, follow this convention because it might be enforced in future releases of babel to catch possible errors.

⁷Thanks to Enrico Gregorio

Esperanto ^
Estonian " ~
French (all varieties) : ; ? !
Galician " , ' ~ < >
Greek ~
Hungarian `
Kurmanji ^
Latin " ^ =
Slovak " ^ ' -
Spanish " , < > '
Turkish : ! =

In addition, the babel core declares ~ as a one-char shorthand which is let, like the standard ~, to a non breaking space.⁸

1.11 Package options

New 3.9a These package options are processed before language options, so that they are taken into account irrespective of its order. The first three options have been available in previous versions.

- KeepShorthandsActive** Tells babel not to deactivate shorthands after loading a language file, so that they are also available in the preamble.
- activeacute** For some languages babel supports this options to set ' as a shorthand in case it is not done by default.
- activegrave** Same for `.
- shorthands=** $\langle char \rangle \langle char \rangle \dots$ | off
The only language shorthands activated are those given, like, eg:

```
\usepackage[esperanto,french,shorthands=:;!]{babel}
```

If ' is included, activeacute is set; if ` is included, activegrave is set. Active characters (like ~) should be preceded by \string (otherwise they will be expanded by \LaTeX before they are passed to the package and therefore they will not be recognized); however, t is provided for the common case of ~ (as well as c for not so common case of the comma). With shorthands=off no language shorthands are defined, As some languages use this mechanism for tools not available otherwise, a macro \babelshorthand is defined, which allows using them; see above.

- safe=** none | ref | bib
Some \LaTeX macros are redefined so that using shorthands is safe. With safe=bib only \nocite, \bibcite and \bibitem are redefined. With safe=ref only \newlabel, \ref and \pageref are redefined (as well as a few macros from varioref and ifthen). With safe=none no macro is redefined. This option is strongly recommended, because a good deal of incompatibilities and errors are related to these redefinitions – of course, in such a case you cannot use shorthands in these macros, but this is not a real problem (just use “allowed” characters).

⁸This declaration serves to nothing, but it is preserved for backward compatibility.

- math=** active | normal
- Shorthands are mainly intended for text, not for math. By setting this option with the value `normal` they are deactivated in math mode (default is `active`) and things like $\${a'}$ (a closing brace after a shorthand) are not a source of trouble any more.
- config=** $\langle file \rangle$
- Load $\langle file \rangle$.`cfg` instead of the default config file `bblopts.cfg` (the file is loaded even with `noconfigs`).
- main=** $\langle language \rangle$
- Sets the main language, as explained above, ie, this language is always loaded last. If it is not given as package or global option, it is added to the list of requested languages.
- headfoot=** $\langle language \rangle$
- By default, headlines and footlines are not touched (only marks), and if they contain language dependent macros (which is not usual) there may be unexpected results. With this option you may set the language in heads and foots.
- noconfigs** Global and language default config files are not loaded, so you can make sure your document is not spoiled by an unexpected `.cfg` file. However, if the key `config` is set, this file is loaded.
- showlanguages** Prints to the log the list of languages loaded when the format was created: number (remember dialects can share it), name, hyphenation file and exceptions file.
- nocase** New 3.9l Language settings for uppercase and lowercase mapping (as set by `\SetCase`) are ignored. Use only if there are incompatibilities with other packages.
- silent** New 3.9l No warnings and no *infos* are written to the log file.⁹
- strings=** generic | unicode | encoded | $\langle label \rangle$ | $\langle font encoding \rangle$
- Selects the encoding of strings in languages supporting this feature. Predefined labels are `generic` (for traditional \TeX , L \AA ICR and ASCII strings), `unicode` (for engines like `xetex` and `luatex`) and `encoded` (for special cases requiring mixed encodings). Other allowed values are font encoding codes (T1, T2A, LGR, L7X...), but only in languages supporting them. Be aware with encoded captions are protected, but they work in `\MakeUppercase` and the like (this feature misuses some internal \LaTeX tools, so use it only as a last resort).
- hyphenmap=** off | main | select | other | other*
- New 3.9g Sets the behaviour of case mapping for hyphenation, provided the language defines it.¹⁰ It can take the following values:
- off** deactivates this feature and no case mapping is applied;
- first** sets it at the first switching commands in the current or parent scope (typically, when the aux file is first read and at `\begin{document}`}, but also the first `\selectlanguage` in the preamble), and it's the default if a single language option has been stated;¹¹

⁹You can use alternatively the package `silence`.

¹⁰Turned off in plain.

¹¹Duplicated options count as several ones.

select sets it only at `\selectlanguage`;
other also sets it at `otherlanguage`;
other* also sets it at `otherlanguage*` as well as in heads and foots (if the option `headfoot` is used) and in auxiliary files (ie, at `\select@language`), and it's the default if several language options have been stated. The option `first` can be regarded as an optimized version of `other*` for monolingual documents.¹²

bidi=

New 3.14 Selects the bidi algorithm to be used in `luatex` and `xetex`. See sec. 1.20.

layout=

New 3.16 Selects which layout elements are adapted in bidi documents. See sec. 1.20.

1.12 The base option

With this package option `babel` just loads some basic macros (those in `switch.def`), defines `\AfterBabelLanguage` and exits. It also selects the hyphenations patterns for the last language passed as option (by its name in `language.dat`). There are two main uses: classes and packages, and as a last resort in case there are, for some reason, incompatible languages. It can be used if you just want to select the hyphenations patterns of a single language, too.

\AfterBabelLanguage `{\langle option-name \rangle}{\langle code \rangle}`

This command is currently the only provided by `base`. Executes `\langle code \rangle` when the file loaded by the corresponding package option is finished (at `\ldf@finish`). The setting is global. So

```
\AfterBabelLanguage{french}{...}
```

does ... at the end of `french.ldf`. It can be used in `ldf` files, too, but in such a case the code is executed only if `\langle option-name \rangle` is the same as `\CurrentOption` (which could not be the same as the option name as set in `\usepackage!`).

EXAMPLE Consider two languages `foo` and `bar` defining the same `\macro` with `\newcommand`. An error is raised if you attempt to load both. Here is a way to overcome this problem:

```
\usepackage[base]{babel}
\AfterBabelLanguage{foo}{%
  \let\macroFoo\macro
  \let\macro\relax}
\usepackage[foo,bar]{babel}
```

1.13 ini files

An alternative approach to define a language is by means of an `ini` file. Currently `babel` provides about 200 of these files containing the basic data required for a language. Most of them set the date, and many also the captions (Unicode and LICR). They will be evolving with the time to add more features (something to keep in mind if backward

¹²Providing `foreign` is pointless, because the case mapping applied is that at the end of paragraph, but if either `xetex` or `luatex` change this behaviour it might be added. On the other hand, `other` is provided even if I [JBL] think it isn't really useful, but who knows.

compatibility is important). The following section shows how to make use of them currently (by means of `\babelprovide`), but a higher interface, based on package options, is under development.

EXAMPLE Although Georgian has its own `ldf` file, here is how to declare this language with an `ini` file in Unicode engines. The `nil` language is required, because currently `babel` raises an error if there is no language.

```
\documentclass{book}

\usepackage[nil]{babel}
\babelprovide[import=ka, main]{georgian}

\babelfont{rm}{DejaVu Sans}

\begin{document}

\tableofcontents

\chapter{სამზარეულო და სუფრის ტრადიციები}

ქართული ტრადიციული სამზარეულო ერთ-ერთი უმდიდრესია მთელ მსოფლიოში.

\end{document}
```

Here is the list (u means Unicode captions, and l means LICR captions):

af	Afrikaans ^{ul}	chr	Cherokee
agq	Aghem	ckb	Central Kurdish
ak	Akan	cs	Czech ^{ul}
am	Amharic ^{ul}	cy	Welsh ^{ul}
ar	Arabic ^{ul}	da	Danish ^{ul}
as	Assamese	dav	Taita
asa	Asu	de-AT	German ^{ul}
ast	Asturian ^{ul}	de-CH	German ^{ul}
az-Cyrl	Azerbaijani	de	German ^{ul}
az-Latn	Azerbaijani	dje	Zarma
az	Azerbaijani ^{ul}	dsb	Lower Sorbian ^{ul}
bas	Basaa	dua	Duala
be	Belarusian ^{ul}	dyo	Jola-Fonyi
bem	Bemba	dz	Dzongkha
bez	Bena	ebu	Embu
bg	Bulgarian ^{ul}	ee	Ewe
bm	Bambara	el	Greek ^{ul}
bn	Bangla ^{ul}	en-AU	English ^{ul}
bo	Tibetan ^u	en-CA	English ^{ul}
brx	Bodo	en-GB	English ^{ul}
bs-Cyrl	Bosnian	en-NZ	English ^{ul}
bs-Latn	Bosnian ^{ul}	en-US	English ^{ul}
bs	Bosnian ^{ul}	en	English ^{ul}
ca	Catalan ^{ul}	eo	Esperanto ^{ul}
ce	Chechen	es-MX	Spanish ^{ul}
cgg	Chiga	es	Spanish ^{ul}

et	Estonian ^{ul}	ko	Korean
eu	Basque ^{ul}	kok	Konkani
ewo	Ewondo	ks	Kashmiri
fa	Persian ^{ul}	ksb	Shambala
ff	Fulah	ksf	Bafia
fi	Finnish ^{ul}	ksh	Colognian
fil	Filipino	kw	Cornish
fo	Faroese	ky	Kyrgyz
fr	French ^{ul}	lag	Langi
fr-BE	French ^{ul}	lb	Luxembourgish
fr-CA	French ^{ul}	lg	Ganda
fr-CH	French ^{ul}	lkt	Lakota
fr-LU	French ^{ul}	ln	Lingala
fur	Friulian ^{ul}	lo	Lao ^{ul}
fy	Western Frisian	lrc	Northern Luri
ga	Irish ^{ul}	lt	Lithuanian ^{ul}
gd	Scottish Gaelic ^{ul}	lu	Luba-Katanga
gl	Galician ^{ul}	luo	Luo
gsw	Swiss German	luy	Luyia
gu	Gujarati	lv	Latvian ^{ul}
guz	Gusii	mas	Masai
gv	Manx	mer	Meru
ha-GH	Hausa	mfe	Morisyen
ha-NE	Hausa ¹	mg	Malagasy
ha	Hausa	mgh	Makhuwa-Meetto
haw	Hawaiian	mgo	Meta'
he	Hebrew ^{ul}	mk	Macedonian ^{ul}
hi	Hindi ^u	ml	Malayalam ^{ul}
hr	Croatian ^{ul}	mn	Mongolian
hsb	Upper Sorbian ^{ul}	mr	Marathi ^{ul}
hu	Hungarian ^{ul}	ms-BN	Malay ¹
hy	Armenian	ms-SG	Malay ¹
ia	Interlingua ^{ul}	ms	Malay ^{ul}
id	Indonesian ^{ul}	mt	Maltese
ig	Igbo	mua	Mundang
ii	Sichuan Yi	my	Burmese
is	Icelandic ^{ul}	mzn	Mazanderani
it	Italian ^{ul}	naq	Nama
ja	Japanese	nb	Norwegian Bokmål ^{ul}
jgo	Ngomba	nd	North Ndebele
jmc	Machame	ne	Nepali
ka	Georgian ^{ul}	nl	Dutch ^{ul}
kab	Kabyle	nmg	Kwasio
kam	Kamba	nn	Norwegian Nynorsk ^{ul}
kde	Makonde	nnh	Ngiemboon
kea	Kabuverdianu	nus	Nuer
khq	Koyra Chiini	nyn	Nyankole
ki	Kikuyu	om	Oromo
kk	Kazakh	or	Odia
kkj	Kako	os	Ossetic
kl	Kalaallisut	pa-Arab	Punjabi
klj	Kalenjin	pa-Guru	Punjabi
km	Khmer	pa	Punjabi
kn	Kannada ^{ul}	pl	Polish ^{ul}

pms	Piedmontese ^{ul}	sw	Swahili
ps	Pashto	ta	Tamil ^u
pt-BR	Portuguese ^{ul}	te	Telugu ^{ul}
pt-PT	Portuguese ^{ul}	teo	Teso
pt	Portuguese ^{ul}	th	Thai ^{ul}
qu	Quechua	ti	Tigrinya
rm	Romansh ^{ul}	tk	Turkmen ^{ul}
rn	Rundi	to	Tongan
ro	Romanian ^{ul}	tr	Turkish ^{ul}
rof	Rombo	twq	Tasawaq
ru	Russian ^{ul}	tzm	Central Atlas Tamazight
rw	Kinyarwanda	ug	Uyghur
rwk	Rwa	uk	Ukrainian ^{ul}
sah	Sakha	ur	Urdu ^{ul}
saq	Samburu	uz-Arab	Uzbek
sbp	Sangu	uz-Cyrl	Uzbek
se	Northern Sami ^{ul}	uz-Latn	Uzbek
seh	Sena	uz	Uzbek
ses	Koyraboro Senni	vai-Latn	Vai
sg	Sango	vai-Vaii	Vai
shi-Latn	Tachelhit	vai	Vai
shi-Tfng	Tachelhit	vi	Vietnamese ^{ul}
shi	Tachelhit	vun	Vunjo
si	Sinhala	wae	Walser
sk	Slovak ^{ul}	xog	Soga
sl	Slovenian ^{ul}	yav	Yangben
smn	Inari Sami	yi	Yiddish
sn	Shona	yo	Yoruba
so	Somali	yue	Cantonese
sq	Albanian ^{ul}	zgh	Standard Moroccan Tamazight
sr-Cyrl-BA	Serbian ^{ul}	zh-Hans-HK	Chinese
sr-Cyrl-ME	Serbian ^{ul}	zh-Hans-MO	Chinese
sr-Cyrl-XK	Serbian ^{ul}	zh-Hans-SG	Chinese
sr-Cyrl	Serbian ^{ul}	zh-Hans	Chinese
sr-Latn-BA	Serbian ^{ul}	zh-Hant-HK	Chinese
sr-Latn-ME	Serbian ^{ul}	zh-Hant-MO	Chinese
sr-Latn-XK	Serbian ^{ul}	zh-Hant	Chinese
sr-Latn	Serbian ^{ul}	zh	Chinese
sr	Serbian ^{ul}	zu	Zulu
sv	Swedish ^{ul}		

In some contexts (currently `\babel font`) an `ini` file may be loaded by its name. Here is the list of the names currently supported. With these languages, `\babel font` loads (if not done before) the language and script names (even if the language is defined as a package option with an `ldf` file).

aghem	armenian
akan	assamese
albanian	asturian
american	asu
amharic	australian
arabic	austrian

azerbaijani-cyrillic	dzongkha
azerbaijani-cyrl	embu
azerbaijani-latin	english-au
azerbaijani-latn	english-australia
azerbaijani	english-ca
bafia	english-canada
bambara	english-gb
basaa	english-newzealand
basque	english-nz
belarusian	english-unitedkingdom
bemba	english-unitedstates
beni	english-us
bengali	english
bodo	esperanto
bosnian-cyrillic	estonian
bosnian-cyrl	ewe
bosnian-latin	ewondo
bosnian-latn	faroesi
bosnian	filipino
brazilian	finnish
breton	french-be
british	french-belgium
bulgarian	french-ca
burmese	french-canada
canadian	french-ch
cantonese	french-lu
catalan	french-luxembourg
centralatlantamazigh	french-switzerland
centralkurdish	french
chechen	friulian
cherokee	fulah
chiga	galician
chinese-hans-hk	ganda
chinese-hans-mo	georgian
chinese-hans-sg	german-at
chinese-hans	german-austria
chinese-hant-hk	german-ch
chinese-hant-mo	german-switzerland
chinese-hant	german
chinese-simplified-hongkongsarchina	greek
chinese-simplified-macausarchina	gujarati
chinese-simplified-singapore	gusii
chinese-simplified	hausa-gh
chinese-traditional-hongkongsarchina	hausa-ghana
chinese-traditional-macausarchina	hausa-ne
chinese-traditional	hausa-niger
chinese	hausa
cognian	hawaiian
cornish	hebrew
croatian	hindi
czech	hungarian
danish	icelandic
duala	igbo
dutch	inari

indonesian
interlingua
irish
italian
japanese
jolafonyi
kabuverdianu
kabyle
kako
kalaallisut
kalenjin
kamba
kannada
kashmiri
kazakh
khmer
kikuyu
kinyarwanda
konkani
korean
koyraborosenni
koyrachiini
kwasio
kyrgyz
lakota
langi
lao
latvian
lingala
lithuanian
lowersorbian
lsorbian
lubakatanga
luo
luxembourgish
luyia
macedonian
machame
makhuwameetto
makonde
malagasy
malay-bn
malay-brunei
malay-sg
malay-singapore
malay
malayalam
maltese
manx
marathi
masai
mazanderani
meru
meta

mexican
mongolian
morisyen
mundang
nama
nepali
newzealand
ngiemboon
ngomba
norsk
northernluri
northernsami
northndebele
norwegianbokmal
norwegiannynorsk
nswissgerman
nuer
nyankole
nynorsk
occitan
oriya
oromo
ossetic
pashto
persian
piedmontese
polish
portuguese-br
portuguese-brazil
portuguese-portugal
portuguese-pt
portuguese
punjabi-arab
punjabi-arabic
punjabi-gurmukhi
punjabi-guru
punjabi
quechua
romanian
romansh
rombo
rundi
russian
rwa
sakha
samburu
samin
sango
sangu
scottishgaelic
sena
serbian-cyrillic-bosniaherzegovina
serbian-cyrillic-kosovo
serbian-cyrillic-montenegro

serbian-cyrillic	telugu
serbian-cyrl-ba	teso
serbian-cyrl-me	thai
serbian-cyrl-xk	tibetan
serbian-cyrl	tigrinya
serbian-latin-bosniaherzegovina	tongan
serbian-latin-kosovo	turkish
serbian-latin-montenegro	turkmen
serbian-latin	ukenglish
serbian-latn-ba	ukrainian
serbian-latn-me	uppertsorbian
serbian-latn-xk	urdu
serbian-latn	usenglish
serbian	usorbian
shambala	uyghur
shona	uzbek-arab
sichuanyi	uzbek-arabic
sinhala	uzbek-cyrillic
slovak	uzbek-cyrl
slovene	uzbek-latin
slovenian	uzbek-latn
soga	uzbek
somali	vai-latin
spanish-mexico	vai-latn
spanish-mx	vai-vai
spanish	vai-vaii
standardmoroccantamazight	vai
swahili	vietnam
swedish	vietnamese
swissgerman	vunjo
tachelhit-latin	walser
tachelhit-latn	welsh
tachelhit-tfng	westernfrisian
tachelhit-tifinagh	yangben
tachelhit	yiddish
taita	yoruba
tamil	zarma
tasawaq	zulu afrikaans

1.14 Selecting fonts

New 3.15 Babel provides a high level interface on top of fontspec to select fonts. There is no need to load fontspec explicitly – babel does it for you with the first `\babelfont`.¹³

`\babelfont` [*<language-list>*] {*<font-family>*} [*<font-options>*] {*<font-name>*}

Here *font-family* is `rm`, `sf` or `tt` (or newly defined ones, as explained below), and *font-name* is the same as in fontspec and the like.

If no language is given, then it is considered the default font for the family, activated when a language is selected. On the other hand, if there is one or more languages in the optional argument, the font will be assigned to them, overriding the default. Alternatively, you may set a font for a script – just precede its name (lowercase) with a star (eg, `*devanagari`).

¹³See also the package `combofont` for a complementary approach.

Babel takes care of the font language and the font script when languages are selected (as well as the writing direction); see the recognized languages above. In most cases, you will not need *font-options*, which is the same as in fontspec, but you may add further key/value pairs if necessary.

EXAMPLE Usage in most cases is very simple. Let us assume you are setting up a document in Swedish, with some words in Hebrew, with a font suited for both languages.

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[swedish, bidi=default]{babel}

\babelprovide[import=he]{hebrew}

\babelfont{rm}{FreeSerif}

\begin{document}

Svenska \foreignlanguage{hebrew}{עברית} svenska.

\end{document}
```

If on the other hand you have to resort to different fonts, you could replace the red line above with, say:

```
\babelfont{rm}{Iwona}
\babelfont[hebrew]{rm}{FreeSerif}
```

`\babelfont` can be used to implicitly define a new font family. Just write its name instead of `rm`, `sf` or `tt`. This is the preferred way to select fonts in addition to the three basic ones.

EXAMPLE Here is how to do it:

```
\babelfont{kai}{FandolKai}
```

Now, `\kaifamily` and `\kaidefault`, as well as `\textkai` are at your disposal.

NOTE You may load fontspec explicitly. For example:

```
\usepackage{fontspec}
\newfontscript{Devanagari}{deva}
\babelfont[hindi]{rm}{Shobhika}
```

This makes sure the OpenType script for Devanagari is `deva` and not `dev2`.

NOTE Directionality is a property affecting margins, indentation, column order, etc., not just text. Therefore, it is under the direct control of the language, which applies both the script and the direction to the text. As a consequence, there is no need to set `Script` when declaring a font (nor `Language`). In fact, it is even discouraged.

NOTE `\fontspec` is not touched at all, only the preset font families (`rm`, `sf`, `tt`, and the like). If a language is switched when an *ad hoc* font is active, or you select the font with this command, neither the script nor the language are passed. You must add them by hand. This is by design, for several reasons (for example, each font has its own set of features and a generic setting for several of them could be problematic, and also a “lower level” font selection is useful).

NOTE The keys `Language` and `Script` just pass these values to the *font*, and do *not* set the script for the *language* (and therefore the writing direction). In other words, the `ini` file or `\babelprovide` provides default values for `\babelfont` if omitted, but the opposite is not true. See the note above for the reasons of this behaviour.

WARNING Do not use `\setxxxxfont` and `\babelfont` at the same time. `\babelfont` follows the standard \TeX conventions to set the basic families – define `\xxdefault`, and activate it with `\xxfamily`. On the other hand, `\setxxxxfont` in `fontspec` takes a different approach, because `\xxfamily` is redefined with the family name hardcoded (so that `\xxdefault` becomes no-op). Of course, both methods are incompatible, and if you use `\setxxxxfont`, font switching with `\babelfont` just does *not* work (nor the standard `\xxdefault`, for that matter).

1.15 Modifying a language

Modifying the behaviour of a language (say, the chapter “caption”), is sometimes necessary, but not always trivial.

- The old way, still valid for many languages, to redefine a caption is the following:

```
\addto\captionenglish{%  
  \renewcommand\contentsname{Foo}%  
}
```

As of 3.15, there is no need to hide spaces with `%` (babel removes them), but it is advisable to do it.

- The new way, which is found in `bulgarian`, `azerbaijani`, `spanish`, `french`, `turkish`, `icelandic`, `vietnamese` and a few more, as well as in languages created with `\babelprovide` and its key import, is:

```
\renewcommand\spanishchaptername{Foo}
```

- Macros to be run when a language is selected can be add to `\extras<lang>`:

```
\addto\extrarussian{\mymacro}
```

There is a counterpart for code to be run when a language is unselected: `\noextras<lang>`.

NOTE These macros (`\captions<lang>`, `\extras<lang>`) may be redefined, but must not be used as such – they just pass information to babel, which executes them in the proper context.

1.16 Creating a language

New 3.10 And what if there is no style for your language or none fits your needs? You may then define quickly a language with the help of the following macro in the preamble.

\babelprovide [*\options*]{*\language-name*}

Defines the internal structure of the language with some defaults: the hyphen rules, if not available, are set to the current ones, left and right hyphen mins are set to 2 and 3, but captions and date are not defined. Conveniently, babel warns you about what to do. Very likely you will find alerts like that in the log file:

```
Package babel Warning: \mylangchaptername not set. Please, define
(babel)                it in the preamble with something like:
(babel)                \renewcommand\mylangchaptername{..}
(babel)                Reported on input line 18.
```

In most cases, you will only need to define a few macros.

EXAMPLE If you need a language named arhinish:

```
\usepackage[danish]{babel}
\babelprovide{arhinish}
\renewcommand\arhinishchaptername{Chapitula}
\renewcommand\arhinishrefname{Refirenke}
\renewcommand\arhinishhyphenmins{22}
```

The main language is not changed (danish in this example). So, you must add `\selectlanguage{arhinish}` or other selectors where necessary. If the language has been loaded as an argument in `\documentclass` or `\usepackage`, then `\babelprovide` redefines the requested data.

import= *\language-tag*

New 3.13 Imports data from an ini file, including captions, date, and hyphenmins. For example:

```
\babelprovide[import=hu]{hungarian}
```

Unicode engines load the UTF-8 variants, while 8-bit engines load the LICR (ie, with macros like `\'` or `\ss`) ones.

There are about 200 ini files, with data taken from the ldf files and the CLDR provided by Unicode. Not all languages in the latter are complete, and therefore neither are the ini files. A few languages will show a warning about the current lack of suitability of the date format (hindi, french, breton, and occitan).

Besides `\today`, there is a `\<language>date` macro with three arguments: year, month and day numbers. In fact, `\today` calls `\<language>today`, which in turn calls `\<language>date{\the\year}{\the\month}{\the\day}`.

captions= *\language-tag*

Loads only the strings. For example:

```
\babelprovide[captions=hu]{hungarian}
```

hyphenrules= \langle language-list \rangle

With this option, with a space-separated list of hyphenation rules, babel assigns to the language the first valid hyphenation rules in the list. For example:

```
\babelprovide[hyphenrules=chavacano spanish italian]{chavacano}
```

If none of the listed hyphenrules exist, the default behaviour applies. Note in this example we set chavacano as first option – without it, it would select spanish even if chavacano exists.

A special value is +, which allocates a new language (in the T_EX sense). It only makes sense as the last value (or the only one; the subsequent ones are silently ignored). It is mostly useful with luatex, because you can add some patterns with \babelpatterns, as for example:

```
\babelprovide[hyphenrules=+]{neo}  
\babelpatterns[neo]{a1 e1 i1 o1 u1}
```

In other engines it just suppresses hyphenation (because the pattern list is empty).

main This valueless option makes the language the main one. Only in newly defined languages.

script= \langle script-name \rangle

New 3.15 Sets the script name to be used by fontspec (eg, Devanagar i). Overrides the value in the ini file. This value is particularly important because it sets the writing direction.

language= \langle language-name \rangle

New 3.15 Sets the language name to be used by fontspec (eg, Hindi). Overrides the value in the ini file. Not so important, but sometimes still relevant.

NOTE (1) If you need shorthands, you can use \usesshorthands and \defineshorthand as described above. (2) Captions and \today are “ensured” with \babelensure (this is the default in ini-based languages).

1.17 Getting the current language name

\language The control sequence \language contains the name of the current language.

WARNING Due to some internal inconsistencies in catcodes, it should *not* be used to test its value. Use iflang, by Heiko Oberdiek.

\iflanguage $\{\langle$ language $\rangle\}\{\langle$ true $\rangle\}\{\langle$ false $\rangle\}$

If more than one language is used, it might be necessary to know which language is active at a specific time. This can be checked by a call to \iflanguage, but note here “language” is used in the T_EX sense, as a set of hyphenation patterns, and *not* as its babel name. This macro takes three arguments. The first argument is the name of a language; the second and third arguments are the actions to take if the result of the test is true or false respectively.

WARNING The advice about \language also applies here – use iflang instead of \iflanguage if possible.

1.18 Hyphenation tools

`\babelhyphen` `*{\type}`
`\babelhyphen` `*{\text}`

New 3.9a It is customary to classify hyphens in two types: (1) *explicit* or *hard hyphens*, which in \TeX are entered as `-`, and (2) *optional* or *soft hyphens*, which are entered as `\-`. Strictly, a *soft hyphen* is not a hyphen, but just a breaking opportunity or, in \TeX terms, a “discretionary”; a *hard hyphen* is a hyphen with a breaking opportunity after it. A further type is a *non-breaking hyphen*, a hyphen without a breaking opportunity. In \TeX , `-` and `\-` forbid further breaking opportunities in the word. This is the desired behaviour very often, but not always, and therefore many languages provide shorthands for these cases. Unfortunately, this has not been done consistently: for example, `-` in Dutch, Portugese, Catalan or Danish is a hard hyphen, while in German, Spanish, Norwegian, Slovak or Russian is a soft hyphen. Furthermore, some of them even redefine `\-`, so that you cannot insert a soft hyphen without breaking opportunities in the rest of the word.

Therefore, some macros are provide with a set of basic “hyphens” which can be used by themselves, to define a user shorthand, or even in language files.

- `\babelhyphen{soft}` and `\babelhyphen{hard}` are self explanatory.
- `\babelhyphen{repeat}` inserts a hard hyphen which is repeated at the beginning of the next line, as done in languages like Polish, Portugese and Spanish.
- `\babelhyphen{nobreak}` inserts a hard hyphen without a break after it (even if a space follows).
- `\babelhyphen{empty}` inserts a break opportunity without a hyphen at all.
- `\babelhyphen{\text}` is a hard “hyphen” using `\text` instead. A typical case is `\babelhyphen{/}`.

With all of them hyphenation in the rest of the word is enabled. If you don’t want enabling it, there is a starred counterpart: `\babelhyphen*{soft}` (which in most cases is equivalent to the original `\-`), `\babelhyphen*{hard}`, etc.

Note `hard` is also good for isolated prefixes (eg, *anti-*) and `nobreak` for isolated suffixes (eg, *-ism*), but in both cases `\babelhyphen*{nobreak}` is usually better.

There are also some differences with \LaTeX : (1) the character used is that set for the current font, while in \LaTeX it is hardwired to `-` (a typical value); (2) the hyphen to be used in fonts with a negative `\hyphenchar` is `-`, like in \LaTeX , but it can be changed to another value by redefining `\babelexhyphen`; (3) a break after the hyphen is forbidden if preceded by a glue >0 pt (at the beginning of a word, provided it is not immediately preceded by, say, a parenthesis).

`\babelhyphenation` `[\langle language \rangle, \langle language \rangle, ...]{\langle exceptions \rangle}`

New 3.9a Sets hyphenation exceptions for the languages given or, without the optional argument, for *all* languages (eg, proper nouns or common loan words, and of course monolingual documents). Language exceptions take precedence over global ones. It can be used only in the preamble, and exceptions are set when the language is first selected, thus taking into account changes of `\lccodes`’s done in `\extras{lang}` as well as the language specific encoding (not set in the preamble by default). Multiple `\babelhyphenation`’s are allowed. For example:

```
\babelhyphenation{Wal-hal-la Dar-bhan-ga}
```

Listed words are saved expanded and therefore it relies on the LICR. Of course, it also works without the LICR if the input and the font encodings are the same, like in Unicode based engines.

\babelpatterns [*<language>* , *<language>* , ...] { *<patterns>* }

New 3.9m *In luatex only*,¹⁴ adds or replaces patterns for the languages given or, without the optional argument, for *all* languages. If a pattern for a certain combination already exists, it gets replaced by the new one.

It can be used only in the preamble, and patterns are added when the language is first selected, thus taking into account changes of \lccodes's done in \extras<lang> as well as the language specific encoding (not set in the preamble by default). Multiple \babelpatterns's are allowed.

Listed patterns are saved expanded and therefore it relies on the LICR. Of course, it also works without the LICR if the input and the font encodings are the same, like in Unicode based engines.

1.19 Selecting scripts

Currently babel provides no standard interface to select scripts, because they are best selected with either \fontencoding (low level) or a language name (high level). Even the Latin script may require different encodings (ie, sets of glyphs) depending on the language, and therefore such a switch would be in a sense incomplete.¹⁵

Some languages sharing the same script define macros to switch it (eg, \textcyrillic), but be aware they may also set the language to a certain default. Even the babel core defined \textlatin, but it was somewhat buggy because in some cases it messed up encodings and fonts (for example, if the main latin encoding was LY1), and therefore it has been deprecated.¹⁶

\ensureascii { *<text>* }

New 3.9i This macro makes sure *<text>* is typeset with a LICR-savvy encoding in the ASCII range. It is used to redefine \TeX and \LaTeX so that they are correctly typeset even with LGR or X2 (the complete list is stored in \BabelNonASCII, which by default is LGR, X2, OT2, OT3, OT6, LHE, LWN, LMA, LMC, LMS, LMU, but you can modify it). So, in some sense it fixes the bug described in the previous paragraph.

If non-ASCII encodings are not loaded (or no encoding at all), it is no-op (also \TeX and \LaTeX are not redefined); otherwise, \ensureascii switches to the encoding at the beginning of the document if ASCII-savvy, or else the last ASCII-savvy encoding loaded. For example, if you load LY1, LGR, then it is set to LY1, but if you load LY1, T2A it is set to T2A. The symbol encodings TS1, T3, and TS3 are not taken into account, since they are not used for “ordinary” text.

The foregoing rules (which are applied “at begin document”) cover most of cases. No assumption is made on characters above 127, which may not follow the LICR conventions – the goal is just to ensure most of the ASCII letters and symbols are the right ones.

¹⁴With luatex exceptions and patterns can be modified almost freely. However, this is very likely a task for a separate package and babel only provides the most basic tools.

¹⁵The so-called Unicode fonts do not improve the situation either. So, a font suited for Vietnamese is not necessarily suited for, say, the romanization of Indic languages, and the fact it contains glyphs for Modern Greek does not mean it includes them for Classic Greek.

¹⁶But still defined for backwards compatibility.

1.20 Selecting directions

No macros to select the writing direction are provided, either – writing direction is intrinsic to each script and therefore it is best set by the language (which could be a dummy one). Furthermore, there are in fact two right-to-left modes, depending on the language, which differ in the way ‘weak’ numeric characters are ordered (eg, Arabic %123 vs Hebrew 123%).

WARNING Setting bidi text has many subtleties (see for example <https://www.w3.org/TR/html-bidi/>). *This means the babel bidi code may take some time before it is truly stable.*¹⁷ An effort is being made to avoid incompatibilities in the future (this one of the reason currently bidi must be explicitly requested as a package option, with a certain bidi model, and also the layout options described below).

There are some package options controlling bidi writing.

bidi= default | basic-r

New 3.14 Selects the bidi algorithm to be used. With default the bidi mechanism is just activated (by default it is not), but every change must be marked up. In xetex and pdftex this is the only option. In luatex, basic-r provides a simple and fast method for R text, which handles numbers and unmarked L text within an R context.

EXAMPLE The following text comes from the Arabic Wikipedia (article about Arabia). Copy-pasting some text from the Wikipedia is a good way to test this feature, which will be improved in the future. Remember basic-r is available in luatex only.¹⁸

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[nil, bidi=basic-r]{babel}

\babelprovide[import=ar, main]{arabic}

\babelfont{rm}{FreeSerif}

\begin{document}

    وقد عرفت شبه جزيرة العرب طيلة العصر الهيليني (الاعريقي) بـ
    Arabia أو Aravia (بالاعريقية Αραβία)، استخدم الرومان ثلاث
    بادئات بـ“Arabia” على ثلاث مناطق من شبه الجزيرة العربية، إلا أنها
    حقيقةً كانت أكبر مما تعرف عليه اليوم.

\end{document}
```

layout= sectioning | counters | lists | contents | footnotes | columns

New 3.16 *To be expanded.* Selects which layout elements are adapted in bidi documents. You may use several options with a comma-separated list (eg, layout=counters.contents.sectioning). This list will be expanded in future releases (tables, captions, etc.). Note not all options are required by all engines.

¹⁷A basic stable version for luatex is planned before Summer 2018. Other engines must wait very likely until Winter.

¹⁸At the time of this writing some Arabic fonts are not rendered correctly by the default luatex font loader, with misplaced kerns inside some words, so double check the resulting text. It seems a fix is on the way.

sectioning makes sure the sectioning macros are typeset in the main language, but with the title text in the current language (see below `\BabelPatchSection` for further details);

counters required in all engines to reorder correctly section numbers and the like (eg, `\subsection`), `\section`); required in xetex and pdftex for counters in general, as well as in luatex with `bidi=default`; required in luatex for numeric footnote marks >9 ;

lists required in xetex and pdftex, but only in multilingual documents in luatex;

contents required in xetex and pdftex; in luatex toc entries are R by default if the main language is R;

columns required in xetex and pdftex to reverse the column order (currently only the standard two column mode); in luatex they are R by default if the main language is R (including multicol);

footnotes not required in monolingual documents, but it may be useful in multilingual documents in all engines; you may use alternatively `\BabelFootnote` described below (what this options does exactly is also explained there).

`\babelsublr` $\{\langle lr-text \rangle\}$

Digits in pdftex must be marked up explicitly (unlike luatex with `bidi=basic-r` and, usually, xetex). Mainly for it (although available in all engines, because it can be useful), this command is provided to set $\{\langle lr-text \rangle\}$ in L mode. It's intended for what Unicode calls weak characters, because words are best set with the corresponding language. For this reason, there is no `r l` counterpart.

`\BabelPatchSection` $\{\langle section-name \rangle\}$

Mainly for bidi text, but it could be useful in other cases. `\BabelPatchSection` and the corresponding option `layout=sectioning` takes a more logical approach (at least in many cases) because it applies the global language to the section format (including the `\chaptername` in `\chapter`), while the section text is still the current language. The latter is passed to tocs and marks, too, and with `sectioning` in `layout` they both reset the “global” language to the main one, while the text uses the “local” language. With `layout=sectioning` all the standard sectioning commands are redefined, but with this command you can set them individually if necessary (but note then tocs and marks are not touched).

`\BabelFootnote` $\{\langle cmd \rangle\}\{\langle local-language \rangle\}\{\langle before \rangle\}\{\langle after \rangle\}$

New 3.17 Something like:

```
\BabelFootnote{\parsfootnote}{\language}\{(\{)\}
```

defines `\parsfootnote` so that `\parsfootnote{note}` is equivalent to:

```
\footnote{(\foreignlanguage{\language}\{note\})}
```

but the footnote itself is typeset in the main language (to unify its direction). In addition, `\parsfootnotetext` is defined. The option `footnotes` just does the following:

```
\BabelFootnote{\footnote}{\language}\{(\{)\}%
\BabelFootnote{\localfootnote}{\language}\{(\{)\}%
\BabelFootnote{\mainfootnote}{(\{)\}
```

(which also redefine `\footnotetext` and define `\localfootnotetext` and `\mainfootnotetext`). If the language argument is empty, then no language is selected inside the argument of the footnote. Note this command is available always in bidi documents, even without `layout=footnotes`.

EXAMPLE If you want to preserve directionality in footnotes and there are many footnotes entirely in English, you can define:

```
\BabelFootnote{\enfootnote}{english}{.}{.}
```

It adds a period outside the English part, so that it is placed at the left in the last line. This means the dot the end of the footnote text should be omitted.

1.21 Language attributes

`\languageattribute`

This is a user-level command, to be used in the preamble of a document (after `\usepackage[...]{babel}`), that declares which attributes are to be used for a given language. It takes two arguments: the first is the name of the language; the second, a (list of) attribute(s) to be used. Attributes must be set in the preamble and only once – they cannot be turned on and off. The command checks whether the language is known in this document and whether the attribute(s) are known for this language. Very often, using a *modifier* in a package option is better. Several language definition files use their own methods to set options. For example, french uses `\frenchsetup`, magyar (1.5) uses `\magyarOptions`; modifiers provided by spanish have no attribute counterparts. Macros setting options are also used (eg, `\ProsodicMarksOn` in latin).

1.22 Hooks

New 3.9a A hook is a piece of code to be executed at certain events. Some hooks are predefined when `luatex` and `xetex` are used.

`\AddBabelHook`

```
{\langle name \rangle}{\langle event \rangle}{\langle code \rangle}
```

The same name can be applied to several events. Hooks may be enabled and disabled for all defined events with `\EnableBabelHook{\langle name \rangle}`, `\DisableBabelHook{\langle name \rangle}`.

Names containing the string `babel` are reserved (they are used, for example, by `\useshortands*` to add a hook for the event `afterextras`).

Current events are the following; in some of them you can use one to three \TeX parameters (`#1`, `#2`, `#3`), with the meaning given:

addialect (language name, dialect name) Used by `luababel.def` to load the patterns if not preloaded.

patterns (language name, language with encoding) Executed just after the `\language` has been set. The second argument has the patterns name actually selected (in the form of either `lang:ENC` or `lang`).

hyphenation (language name, language with encoding) Executed locally just before exceptions given in `\babelhyphenation` are actually set.

defaultcommands Used (locally) in `\StartBabelCommands`.

encodedcommands (input, font encodings) Used (locally) in `\StartBabelCommands`. Both `xetex` and `luatex` make sure the encoded text is read correctly.

stopcommands Used to reset the the above, if necessary.

write This event comes just after the switching commands are written to the aux file.

beforeextras Just before executing `\extras⟨language⟩`. This event and the next one should not contain language-dependent code (for that, add it to `\extras⟨language⟩`).

afterextras Just after executing `\extras⟨language⟩`. For example, the following deactivates shorthands in all languages:

```
\AddBabelHook{noshort}{afterextras}{\languageshorthands{none}}
```

stringprocess Instead of a parameter, you can manipulate the macro `\BabelString` containing the string to be defined with `\SetString`. For example, to use an expanded version of the string in the definition, write:

```
\AddBabelHook{myhook}{stringprocess}{%
\protected@edef\BabelString{\BabelString}}
```

initiateactive (char as active, char as other, original char) **New 3.9i** Executed just after a shorthand has been ‘initiated’. The three parameters are the same character with different catcodes: active, other (`\string’ed`) and the original one.

afterreset **New 3.9i** Executed when selecting a language just after `\originalTeX` is run and reset to its base value, before executing `\captions⟨language⟩` and `\date⟨language⟩`.

Four events are used in `hyphen.cfg`, which are handled in a quite different way for efficiency reasons – unlike the precedent ones, they only have a single hook and replace a default definition.

everylanguage (language) Executed before every language patterns are loaded.

loadkernel (file) By default loads `switch.def`. It can be used to load a different version of this files or to load nothing.

loadpatterns (patterns file) Loads the patterns file. Used by `luababel.def`.

loadexceptions (exceptions file) Loads the exceptions file. Used by `luababel.def`.

\BabelContentsFiles **New 3.9a** This macro contains a list of “toc” types requiring a command to switch the language. Its default value is `toc, lof, lot`, but you may redefine it with `\renewcommand` (it’s up to you to make sure no toc type is duplicated).

1.23 Languages supported by babel

In the following table most of the languages supported by babel are listed, together with the names of the option which you can load babel with for each language. Note this list is open and the current options may be different. It does not include `ini` files.

Afrikaans afrikaans

Azerbaijani azerbaijani

Basque basque

Breton breton

Bulgarian bulgarian

Catalan catalan

Croatian croatian

Czech czech

Danish danish

Dutch dutch

English english, USenglish, american, UKenglish, british, canadian, australian, newzealand

Esperanto esperanto

Estonian estonian
Finnish finnish
French french, francais, canadien, acadian
Galician galician
German austrian, german, germanb, ngerman, naustrian
Greek greek, polutonikogreek
Hebrew hebrew
Icelandic icelandic
Indonesian bahasa, indonesian, indon, bahasai
Interlingua interlingua
Irish Gaelic irish
Italian italian
Latin latin
Lower Sorbian lowersorbian
Malay bahasam, malay, melayu
North Sami samin
Norwegian norsk, nynorsk
Polish polish
Portuguese portuges, portuguese, brazilian, brazil
Romanian romanian
Russian russian
Scottish Gaelic scottish
Spanish spanish
Slovakian slovak
Slovenian slovene
Swedish swedish
Serbian serbian
Turkish turkish
Ukrainian ukrainian
Upper Sorbian uppersorbian
Welsh welsh

There are more languages not listed above, including hindi, thai, thaicjk, latvian, turkmen, magyar, mongolian, romansh, lithuanian, spanglish, vietnamese, japanese, pinyin, arabic, farsi, ibygreek, bgreek, serbianc, frenchle, ethiop and friulan.

Most of them work out of the box, but some may require extra fonts, encoding files, a preprocessor or even a complete framework (like CJK). For example, if you have got the `velthuis/devnag` package, you can create a file with extension `.dn`:

```

\documentclass{article}
\usepackage[hindi]{babel}
\begin{document}
{\dn devaanaa.m priya.h}
\end{document}

```

Then you preprocess it with `devnag <file>`, which creates `<file>.tex`; you can then typeset the latter with \LaTeX .

1.24 Tips, workarounds, know issues and notes

- If you use the document class `book` and you use `\ref` inside the argument of `\chapter` (or just use `\ref` inside `\MakeUppercase`), \LaTeX will keep complaining about an undefined label. To prevent such problems, you could revert to using uppercase labels, you can use `\lowercase{\ref{foo}}` inside the argument of `\chapter`, or, if you will not use shorthands in labels, set the `safe` option to `none` or `bib`.

- Both `ltxdoc` and `babel` use `\AtBeginDocument` to change some catcodes, and `babel` reloads `hline` to make sure `:` has the right one, so if you want to change the catcode of `|` it has to be done using the same method at the proper place, with

```
\AtBeginDocument{\DeleteShortVerb{\|}}
```

before loading `babel`. This way, when the document begins the sequence is (1) make `|` active (`ltxdoc`); (2) make it unactive (your settings); (3) make `babel` shorthands active (`babel`); (4) reload `hline` (`babel`, now with the correct catcodes for `|` and `:`).

- Documents with several input encodings are not frequent, but sometimes are useful. You can set different encodings for different languages as the following example shows:

```
\addto\extrasfrench{\inputencoding{latin1}}
\addto\extrarussian{\inputencoding{koi8-r}}
```

(A recent version of `inputenc` is required.)

- For the hyphenation to work correctly, `lccodes` cannot change, because \TeX only takes into account the values when the paragraph is hyphenated, i.e., when it has been finished.¹⁹ So, if you write a chunk of French text with `\foreignlanguage`, the apostrophes might not be taken into account. This is a limitation of \TeX , not of `babel`. Alternatively, you may use `\usesorthands` to activate `'` and `\defineshortand`, or redefine `\textquoteright` (the latter is called by the non-ASCII right quote).
- `\bibitem` is out of sync with `\selectlanguage` in the `.aux` file. The reason is `\bibitem` uses `\immediate` (and others, in fact), while `\selectlanguage` doesn't. There is no known workaround.
- `Babel` does not take into account `\normalsfcodes` and (non-)French spacing is not always properly (un)set by languages. However, problems are unlikely to happen and therefore this part remains untouched in version 3.9 (but it is in the 'to do' list).
- Using a character mathematically active (ie, with math code "8000) as a shorthand can make \TeX enter in an infinite loop in some rare cases. (Another issue in the 'to do' list, although there is a partial solution.)

The following packages can be useful, too (the list is still far from complete):

csquotes Logical markup for quotes.

iflang Tests correctly the current language.

hyphsubst Selects a different set of patterns for a language.

translator An open platform for packages that need to be localized.

siunitx Typesetting of numbers and physical quantities.

biblatex Programmable bibliographies and citations.

bicaption Bilingual captions.

babelbib Multilingual bibliographies.

microtype Adjusts the typesetting according to some languages (kerning and spacing).
Ligatures can be disabled.

substitutefont Combines fonts in several encodings.

mkpattern Generates hyphenation patterns.

tracklang Tracks which languages have been requested.

¹⁹This explains why \LaTeX assumes the lowercase mapping of T1 and does not provide a tool for multiple mappings. Unfortunately, `\savingshyphcodes` is not a solution either, because `lccodes` for hyphenation are frozen in the format and cannot be changed.

1.25 Current and future work

Current work is focused on the so-called complex scripts in luatex. In 8-bit engines, babel provided a basic support for bidi text as part of the style for Hebrew, but it is somewhat unsatisfactory and internally replaces some hardwired commands by other hardwired commands (generic changes would be much better).

It is possible now to typeset Arabic or Hebrew with numbers and L text. Next on the roadmap are line breaking in Thai and the like, as well as “non-European” digits. Also on the roadmap are R layouts (lists, footnotes, tables, column order), page and section numbering, and maybe kashida justification.

As to Thai line breaking, here is the basic idea of what luatex can do for us, with the Thai patterns and a little script (the final version will not be so little, of course). It replaces each discretionary by the equivalent to ZWJ.

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[nil]{babel}

\babelprovide[import=th, main]{thai}

\babelfont{rm}{FreeSerif}

\directlua{
local GLYPH = node.id'glyph'
function insertsp (head)
  local size = 0
  for item in node.traverse(head) do
    local i = item.id
    if i == GLYPH then
      f = font.getfont(item.font)
      size = f.size
    elseif i == 7 then
      local n = node.new(12, 0)
      node.setglue(n, 0, size * 1) % 1 is a factor
      node.insert_before(head, item, n)
      node.remove(head, item)
    end
  end
end
end

luatexbase.add_to_callback('hyphenate',
  function (head, tail)
    lang.hyphenate(head)
    insertsp(head)
  end, 'insertsp')
}

\begin{document}

(Thai text.)

\end{document}
```

Useful additions would be, for example, time, currency, addresses and personal names.²⁰ But that is the easy part, because they don't require modifying the L^AT_EX internals.

²⁰See for example POSIX, ISO 14652 and the Unicode Common Locale Data Repository (CLDR). Those system, however, have limited application to T_EX because their aim is just to display information and not fine typesetting.

Also interesting are differences in the sentence structure or related to it. For example, in Basque the number precedes the name (including chapters), in Hungarian “from (1)” is “(1)-ből”, but “from (3)” is “(3)-ből”, in Spanish an item labelled “3.^o” may be referred to as either “ítem 3.^o” or “3.^{er} ítem”, and so on.

1.26 Tentative and experimental code

Handling of “**Unicode**” fonts is problematic. There is fontspec, but special macros are required (not only the NFSS ones) and it doesn’t provide “orthogonal axis” for features, including those related to the language (mainly language and script). A couple of tentative macros, were provided by babel ($\geq 3.9g$) with a partial solution. These macros are now deprecated – use `\babelfont`.

- `\babelFSstore{<babel-language>}` sets the current three basic families (rm, sf, tt) as the default for the language given.
- `\babelFSdefault{<babel-language>}{<fontspec-features>}` patches `\fontspec` so that the given features are always passed as the optional argument or added to it (not an ideal solution).

So, for example:

```
\setmainfont[Language=Turkish]{Minion Pro}
\babelFSstore{turkish}
\setmainfont{Minion Pro}
\babelFSfeatures{turkish}{Language=Turkish}
```

Bidi writing is taking its *first steps*. *First steps* means exactly that. For example, in luatex any Arabic text must be marked up explicitly in L mode. On the other hand, xetex poses quite different challenges. Document layout (lists, footnotes, etc.) is not touched at all. See the code section for `\foreignlanguage*` (a new starred version of `\foreignlanguage`). xetex relies on the font to properly handle these unmarked changes, so it is not under the control of \TeX .

2 Loading languages with language.dat

\TeX and most engines based on it (pdf \TeX , xetex, ϵ - \TeX , the main exception being luatex) require hyphenation patterns to be preloaded when a format is created (eg, \LaTeX , Xe \LaTeX , pdf \LaTeX). babel provides a tool which has become standard in many distributions and based on a “configuration file” named `language.dat`. The exact way this file is used depends on the distribution, so please, read the documentation for the latter (note also some distributions generate the file with some tool).

New 3.9q With luatex, however, patterns are loaded on the fly when requested by the language (except the “0th” language, typically english, which is preloaded always).²¹ Until 3.9n, this task was delegated to the package `luatex-hyphen`, by Khaled Hosny, Élie Roux, and Manuel Pégourié-Gonnard, and required an extra file named `language.dat.lua`, but now a new mechanism has been devised based solely on `language.dat`. **You must rebuild the formats** if upgrading from a previous version. You may want to have a local `language.dat` for a particular project (for example, a book on Chemistry).²²

²¹This feature was added to 3.9o, but it was buggy. Both 3.9o and 3.9p are deprecated.

²²The loader for lua(e)tex is slightly different as it’s not based on babel but on `etex.src`. Until 3.9p it just didn’t work, but thanks to the new code it works by reloading the data in the babel way, i.e., with `language.dat`.

2.1 Format

In that file the person who maintains a \TeX environment has to record for which languages he has hyphenation patterns *and* in which files these are stored²³. When hyphenation exceptions are stored in a separate file this can be indicated by naming that file *after* the file with the hyphenation patterns.

The file can contain empty lines and comments, as well as lines which start with an equals (=) sign. Such a line will instruct \LaTeX that the hyphenation patterns just processed have to be known under an alternative name. Here is an example:

```
% File      : language.dat
% Purpose   : tell iniTeX what files with patterns to load.
english    english.hyphenations
=british

dutch      hyphen.dutch exceptions.dutch % Nederlands
german     hyphen.ger
```

You may also set the font encoding the patterns are intended for by following the language name by a colon and the encoding code.²⁴ For example:

```
german:T1 hyphenT1.ger
german hyphen.ger
```

With the previous settings, if the encoding when the language is selected is T1 then the patterns in `hyphenT1.ger` are used, but otherwise use those in `hyphen.ger` (note the encoding could be set in `\extras{lang}`).

A typical error when using `babel` is the following:

```
No hyphenation patterns were preloaded for
the language '<lang>' into the format.
Please, configure your TeX system to add them and
rebuild the format. Now I will use the patterns
preloaded for english instead}}
```

It simply means you must reconfigure `language.dat`, either by hand or with the tools provided by your distribution.

3 The interface between the core of babel and the language definition files

The *language definition files* (`ldf`) must conform to a number of conventions, because these files have to fill in the gaps left by the common code in `babel.def`, i. e., the definitions of the macros that produce texts. Also the language-switching possibility which has been built into the `babel` system has its implications.

The following assumptions are made:

- Some of the language-specific definitions might be used by plain \TeX users, so the files have to be coded so that they can be read by both \LaTeX and plain \TeX . The current format can be checked by looking at the value of the macro `\fmtname`.

²³This is because different operating systems sometimes use very different file-naming conventions.

²⁴This is not a new feature, but in former versions it didn't work correctly.

- The common part of the babel system redefines a number of macros and environments (defined previously in the document style) to put in the names of macros that replace the previously hard-wired texts. These macros have to be defined in the language definition files.
- The language definition files must define five macros, used to activate and deactivate the language-specific definitions. These macros are `\langle lang \rangle hyphenmins`, `\captions\langle lang \rangle`, `\date\langle lang \rangle`, `\extras\langle lang \rangle` and `\noextras\langle lang \rangle` (the last two may be left empty); where `\langle lang \rangle` is either the name of the language definition file or the name of the \LaTeX option that is to be used. These macros and their functions are discussed below. You must define all or none for a language (or a dialect); defining, say, `\date\langle lang \rangle` but not `\captions\langle lang \rangle` does not raise an error but can lead to unexpected results.
- When a language definition file is loaded, it can define `\l@\langle lang \rangle` to be a dialect of `\language0` when `\l@\langle lang \rangle` is undefined.
- Language names must be all lowercase. If an unknown language is selected, babel will attempt setting it after lowercasing its name.
- The semantics of modifiers is not defined (on purpose). In most cases, they will just be simple separated options (eg, spanish), but a language might require, say, a set of options organized as a tree with suboptions (in such a case, the recommended separator is `/`).

Some recommendations:

- The preferred shorthand is `"`, which is not used in \LaTeX (quotes are entered as ``` and `'`). Other good choices are characters which are not used in a certain context (eg, `=` in an ancient language). Note however `=`, `<`, `>`, `:` and the like can be dangerous, because they may be used as part of the syntax of some elements (numeric expressions, key/value pairs, etc.).
- Captions should not contain shorthands or encoding dependent commands (the latter is not always possible, but should be clearly documented). They should be defined using the LICR. You may also use the new tools for encoded strings, described below.
- Avoid adding things to `\noextras\langle lang \rangle` except for `umlauthigh` and `friends`, `\bbl@deactivate`, `\bbl@(non)frenchspacing`, and language specific macros. Use always, if possible, `\bbl@save` and `\bbl@savevariable` (except if you still want to have access to the previous value). Do not reset a macro or a setting to a hardcoded value. Never. Instead save its value in `\extras\langle lang \rangle`.
- Do not switch scripts. If you want to make sure a set of glyphs is used, switch either the font encoding (low level) or the language (high level, which in turn may switch the font encoding). Usage of things like `\latintext` is deprecated.²⁵
- Please, for “private” internal macros do not use the `\bbl@` prefix. It is used by babel and it can lead to incompatibilities.

There are no special requirements for documenting your language files. Now they are not included in the base babel manual, so provide a standalone document suited for your needs, as well as other files you think can be useful. A PDF and a “readme” are strongly recommended.

²⁵But not removed, for backward compatibility.

3.1 Guidelines for contributed languages

Now language files are “outsourced” and are located in a separate directory (`/macros/latex/contrib/babel-contrib`), so that they are contributed directly to CTAN (please, do not send to me language styles just to upload them to CTAN).

Of course, placing your style files in this directory is not mandatory, but if you want to do it, here are a few guidelines.

- Do not hesitate stating on the file heads you are the author and the maintainer, if you actually are. There is no need to state the babel maintainer(s) as authors if they have not contributed significantly to your language files.
- Fonts are not strictly part of a language, so they are best placed in the corresponding TeX tree. This includes not only `tfm`, `vf`, `ps1`, `otf`, `mf` files and the like, but also `fd` ones.
- Font and input encodings are usually best placed in the corresponding tree, too, but sometimes they belong more naturally to the babel style. Note you may also need to define a LICR.
- Babel ldf files may just interface a framework, as it happens often with Oriental languages/scripts. This framework is best placed in its own directory.

The following page provides a starting point: <http://www.texnia.com/incubator.html>. If you need further assistance and technical advice in the development of language styles, I am willing to help you. And of course, you can make any suggestion you like.

3.2 Basic macros

In the core of the babel system, several macros are defined for use in language definition files. Their purpose is to make a new language known. The first two are related to hyphenation patterns.

`\addlanguage` The macro `\addlanguage` is a non-outer version of the macro `\newlanguage`, defined in `plain.tex` version 3.x. For older versions of `plain.tex` and `lplain.tex` a substitute definition is used. Here “language” is used in the TeX sense of set of hyphenation patterns.

`\adddialect` The macro `\adddialect` can be used when two languages can (or must) use the same hyphenation patterns. This can also be useful for languages for which no patterns are preloaded in the format. In such cases the default behaviour of the babel system is to define this language as a ‘dialect’ of the language for which the patterns were loaded as `\language0`. Here “language” is used in the TeX sense of set of hyphenation patterns.

`\<lang>hyphenmins` The macro `\<lang>hyphenmins` is used to store the values of the `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin`. Redefine this macro to set your own values, with two numbers corresponding to these two parameters. For example:

```
\renewcommand\spanishhyphenmins{34}
```

(Assigning `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin` directly in `\extras<lang>` has no effect.)

`\providehyphenmins` The macro `\providehyphenmins` should be used in the language definition files to set `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin`. This macro will check whether these parameters were provided by the hyphenation file before it takes any action. If these values have been already set, this command is ignored (currently, default pattern files do *not* set them).

`\captions<lang>` The macro `\captions<lang>` defines the macros that hold the texts to replace the original hard-wired texts.

`\date<lang>` The macro `\date<lang>` defines `\today`.

`\extras<lang>` The macro `\extras<lang>` contains all the extra definitions needed for a specific language.

	This macro, like the following, is a hook – you can add things to it, but it must not be used directly.
<code>\noextras<lang></code>	Because we want to let the user switch between languages, but we do not know what state \TeX might be in after the execution of <code>\extras<lang></code> , a macro that brings \TeX into a predefined state is needed. It will be no surprise that the name of this macro is <code>\noextras<lang></code> .
<code>\bbl@declare@ttribute</code>	This is a command to be used in the language definition files for declaring a language attribute. It takes three arguments: the name of the language, the attribute to be defined, and the code to be executed when the attribute is to be used.
<code>\main@language</code>	To postpone the activation of the definitions needed for a language until the beginning of a document, all language definition files should use <code>\main@language</code> instead of <code>\selectlanguage</code> . This will just store the name of the language, and the proper language will be activated at the start of the document.
<code>\ProvidesLanguage</code>	The macro <code>\ProvidesLanguage</code> should be used to identify the language definition files. Its syntax is similar to the syntax of the \LaTeX command <code>\ProvidesPackage</code> .
<code>\LdfInit</code>	The macro <code>\LdfInit</code> performs a couple of standard checks that must be made at the beginning of a language definition file, such as checking the category code of the <code>@</code> -sign, preventing the <code>.ldf</code> file from being processed twice, etc.
<code>\ldf@quit</code>	The macro <code>\ldf@quit</code> does work needed if a <code>.ldf</code> file was processed earlier. This includes resetting the category code of the <code>@</code> -sign, preparing the language to be activated at <code>\begin{document}</code> time, and ending the input stream.
<code>\ldf@finish</code>	The macro <code>\ldf@finish</code> does work needed at the end of each <code>.ldf</code> file. This includes resetting the category code of the <code>@</code> -sign, loading a local configuration file, and preparing the language to be activated at <code>\begin{document}</code> time.
<code>\loadlocalcfg</code>	After processing a language definition file, \LaTeX can be instructed to load a local configuration file. This file can, for instance, be used to add strings to <code>\captions<lang></code> to support local document classes. The user will be informed that this configuration file has been loaded. This macro is called by <code>\ldf@finish</code> .
<code>\substitutefontfamily</code>	(Deprecated.) This command takes three arguments, a font encoding and two font family names. It creates a font description file for the first font in the given encoding. This <code>.fd</code> file will instruct \LaTeX to use a font from the second family when a font from the first family in the given encoding seems to be needed.

3.3 Skeleton

Here is the basic structure of an `ldf` file, with a language, a dialect and an attribute. Strings are best defined using the method explained in in sec. 3.8 (babel 3.9 and later).

```

\ProvidesLanguage{<language>}
    [2016/04/23 v0.0 <Language> support from the babel system]
\LdfInit{<language>}{captions<language>}

\ifx\undefined\l@<language>
    \@nopatterns{<Language>}
    \adddialect\l@<language>0
\fi

\adddialect\l@<dialect>\l@<language>

\bbl@declare@ttribute{<language>}{<attrib>}{%
    \expandafter\addto\expandafter\extras<language>
    \expandafter{\extras<attrib><language>}%
    \let\captions<language>\captions<attrib><language>}

```

```

\providehyphenmins{<language>}{\tw@\thr@@}

\StartBabelCommands*{<language>}{captions}
\SetString\chaptername{<chapter name>}
% More strings

\StartBabelCommands*{<language>}{date}
\SetString\monthinname{<name of first month>}
% More strings

\StartBabelCommands*{<dialect>}{captions}
\SetString\chaptername{<chapter name>}
% More strings

\StartBabelCommands*{<dialect>}{date}
\SetString\monthinname{<name of first month>}
% More strings

\EndBabelCommands

\addto\extras<language>{}
\addto\noextras<language>{}
\let\extras<dialect>\extras<language>
\let\noextras<dialect>\noextras<language>

\ldf@finish{<language>}

```

3.4 Support for active characters

In quite a number of language definition files, active characters are introduced. To facilitate this, some support macros are provided.

`\initiate@active@char`

The internal macro `\initiate@active@char` is used in language definition files to instruct \TeX to give a character the category code ‘active’. When a character has been made active it will remain that way until the end of the document. Its definition may vary.

`\bbl@activate`

The command `\bbl@activate` is used to change the way an active character expands.

`\bbl@deactivate`

`\bbl@activate` ‘switches on’ the active behaviour of the character. `\bbl@deactivate` lets the active character expand to its former (mostly) non-active self.

`\declare@shorthand`

The macro `\declare@shorthand` is used to define the various shorthands. It takes three arguments: the name for the collection of shorthands this definition belongs to; the character (sequence) that makes up the shorthand, i.e. `~` or `"a`; and the code to be executed when the shorthand is encountered. (It does *not* raise an error if the shorthand character has not been “initiated”.)

`\bbl@add@special`

The \TeX book states: “Plain \TeX includes a macro called `\dospecials` that is essentially a set macro, representing the set of all characters that have a special category code.” [2, p. 380]

`\bbl@remove@special`

It is used to set text ‘verbatim’. To make this work if more characters get a special category code, you have to add this character to the macro `\dospecial`. \TeX adds another macro called `\@sanitize` representing the same character set, but without the curly braces. The macros `\bbl@add@special<char>` and `\bbl@remove@special<char>` add and remove the character `<char>` to these two sets.

3.5 Support for saving macro definitions

Language definition files may want to *redefine* macros that already exist. Therefore a mechanism for saving (and restoring) the original definition of those macros is provided.

We provide two macros for this²⁶.

`\babel@save` To save the current meaning of any control sequence, the macro `\babel@save` is provided. It takes one argument, `\langle csname \rangle`, the control sequence for which the meaning has to be saved.

`\babel@savevariable` A second macro is provided to save the current value of a variable. In this context, anything that is allowed after the `\` the primitive is considered to be a variable. The macro takes one argument, the `\langle variable \rangle`.
The effect of the preceding macros is to append a piece of code to the current definition of `\originalTeX`. When `\originalTeX` is expanded, this code restores the previous definition of the control sequence or the previous value of the variable.

3.6 Support for extending macros

`\addto` The macro `\addto{\langle control sequence \rangle}{\langle TeX code \rangle}` can be used to extend the definition of a macro. The macro need not be defined (ie, it can be undefined or `\relax`). This macro can, for instance, be used in adding instructions to a macro like `\extrasenglish`. Be careful when using this macro, because depending on the case the assignment could be either global (usually) or local (sometimes). That does not seem very consistent, but this behaviour is preserved for backward compatibility. If you are using `etoolbox`, by Philipp Lehman, consider using the tools provided by this package instead of `\addto`.

3.7 Macros common to a number of languages

`\bbl@allowhyphens` In several languages compound words are used. This means that when `TeX` has to hyphenate such a compound word, it only does so at the ‘-’ that is used in such words. To allow hyphenation in the rest of such a compound word, the macro `\bbl@allowhyphens` can be used.

`\allowhyphens` Same as `\bbl@allowhyphens`, but does nothing if the encoding is `T1`. It is intended mainly for characters provided as real glyphs by this encoding but constructed with `\accent` in `OT1`.

Note the previous command (`\bbl@allowhyphens`) has different applications (hyphens and discretionaries) than this one (composite chars). Note also prior to version 3.7, `\allowhyphens` had the behaviour of `\bbl@allowhyphens`.

`\set@low@box` For some languages, quotes need to be lowered to the baseline. For this purpose the macro `\set@low@box` is available. It takes one argument and puts that argument in an `\hbox`, at the baseline. The result is available in `\box0` for further processing.

`\save@sf@q` Sometimes it is necessary to preserve the `\spacefactor`. For this purpose the macro `\save@sf@q` is available. It takes one argument, saves the current `spacefactor`, executes the argument, and restores the `spacefactor`.

`\bbl@frenchspacing`
`\bbl@nonfrenchspacing` The commands `\bbl@frenchspacing` and `\bbl@nonfrenchspacing` can be used to properly switch French spacing on and off.

3.8 Encoding-dependent strings

New 3.9a Babel 3.9 provides a way of defining strings in several encodings, intended mainly for `luatex` and `xetex`. This is the only new feature requiring changes in language files if you want to make use of it.

Furthermore, it must be activated explicitly, with the package option `strings`. If there is no `strings`, these blocks are ignored, except `\SetCases` (and except if forced as described below). In other words, the old way of defining/switching strings still works and it’s used by default.

²⁶This mechanism was introduced by Bernd Raichle.

It consist is a series of blocks started with `\StartBabelCommands`. The last block is closed with `\EndBabelCommands`. Each block is a single group (ie, local declarations apply until the next `\StartBabelCommands` or `\EndBabelCommands`). An ldf may contain several series of this kind.

Thanks to this new feature, string values and string language switching are not mixed any more. No need of `\addto`. If the language is french, just redefine `\frenchchaptername`.

`\StartBabelCommands` $\langle\textit{language-list}\rangle\{\langle\textit{category}\rangle\}[\langle\textit{selector}\rangle]$

The $\langle\textit{language-list}\rangle$ specifies which languages the block is intended for. A block is taken into account only if the `\CurrentOption` is listed here. Alternatively, you can define `\BabelLanguages` to a comma-separated list of languages to be defined (if undefined, `\StartBabelCommands` sets it to `\CurrentOption`). You may write `\CurrentOption` as the language, but this is discouraged – a explicit name (or names) is much better and clearer. A “selector” is a name to be used as value in package option strings, optionally followed by extra info about the encodings to be used. The name `unicode` must be used for xetex and luatex (the key `strings` has also other two special values: `generic` and `encoded`). If a string is set several times (because several blocks are read), the first one take precedence (ie, it works much like `\providecommand`).

Encoding info is `charset=` followed by a `charset`, which if given sets how the strings should be traslated to the internal representation used by the engine, typically `utf8`, which is the only value supported currently (default is no traslations). Note `charset` is applied by luatex and xetex when reading the file, not when the macro or string is used in the document. A list of font encodings which the strings are expected to work with can be given after `fontenc=` (separated with spaces, if two or more) – recommended, but not mandatory, although blocks without this key are not taken into account if you have requested `strings=encoded`.

Blocks without a selector are read always if the key `strings` has been used. They provide fallback values, and therefore must be the last blocks; they should be provided always if possible and all strings should be defined somehow inside it; they can be the only blocks (mainly LGC scripts using the LICR). Blocks without a selector can be activated explicitly with `strings=generic` (no block is taken into account except those). With `strings=encoded`, strings in those blocks are set as default (internally, ?). With `strings=encoded` strings are protected, but they are correctly expanded in `\MakeUppercase` and the like. If there is no key `strings`, string definitions are ignored, but `\SetCases` are still honoured (in a encoded way).

The $\langle\textit{category}\rangle$ is either `captions`, `date` or `extras`. You must stick to these three categories, even if no error is raised when using other name.²⁷ It may be empty, too, but in such a case using `\SetString` is an error (but not `\SetCase`).

```
\StartBabelCommands{language}{captions}
  [unicode, fontenc=TU EU1 EU2, charset=utf8]
\SetString{\chaptername}{utf8-string}

\StartBabelCommands{language}{captions}
\SetString{\chaptername}{ascii-maybe-LICR-string}

\EndBabelCommands
```

A real example is:

²⁷In future releases further categories may be added.

```

\StartBabelCommands{austrian}{date}
[unicode, fontenc=TU EU1 EU2, charset=utf8]
\SetString\monthiname{Jänner}

\StartBabelCommands{german,austrian}{date}
[unicode, fontenc=TU EU1 EU2, charset=utf8]
\SetString\monthiiname{März}

\StartBabelCommands{austrian}{date}
\SetString\monthiname{J\"{a}nner}

\StartBabelCommands{german}{date}
\SetString\monthiname{Januar}


\StartBabelCommands{german,austrian}{date}
\SetString\monthiiname{Februar}
\SetString\monthiiname{M\"{a}rz}
\SetString\monthivname{April}
\SetString\monthvname{Mai}
\SetString\monthvname{Juni}
\SetString\monthviiname{Juli}
\SetString\monthviiname{August}
\SetString\monthixname{September}
\SetString\monthxname{Oktober}
\SetString\monthxiname{November}
\SetString\monthxiiname{Dezenber}
\SetString\today{\number\day.~%
\csname month\romannumeral\month name\endcsname\space
\number\year}

\StartBabelCommands{german,austrian}{captions}
\SetString\prefacename{Vorwort}
[etc.]

\EndBabelCommands

```

When used in ldf files, previous values of $\langle category \rangle \langle language \rangle$ are overridden, which means the old way to define strings still works and used by default (to be precise, is first set to undefined and then strings are added). However, when used in the preamble or in a package, new settings are added to the previous ones, if the language exists (in the babel sense, ie, if $\backslash date \langle language \rangle$ exists).

$\backslash StartBabelCommands$  $\{ \langle language-list \rangle \} \{ \langle category \rangle \} [\langle selector \rangle]$

The starred version just forces strings to take a value – if not set as package option, then the default for the engine is used. This is not done by default to prevent backward incompatibilities, but if you are creating a new language this version is better. It's up to the maintainers of the current languages to decide if using it is appropriate.²⁸

$\backslash EndBabelCommands$ Marks the end of the series of blocks.

$\backslash AfterBabelCommands$ $\{ \langle code \rangle \}$

The code is delayed and executed at the global scope just after $\backslash EndBabelCommands$.

²⁸This replaces in 3.9g a short-lived $\backslash UseStrings$ which has been removed because it did not work.

\SetString {*<macro-name>*}{*<string>*}

Adds *<macro-name>* to the current category, and defines globally *<lang-macro-name>* to *<code>* (after applying the transformation corresponding to the current charset or defined with the hook `stringprocess`).

Use this command to define strings, without including any “logic” if possible, which should be a separated macro. See the example above for the date.

\SetStringLoop {*<macro-name>*}{*<string-list>*}

A convenient way to define several ordered names at once. For example, to define `\abmoniname`, `\abmoniiname`, etc. (and similarly with `abday`):

```
\SetStringLoop{abmon#1name}{en,fb,mr,ab,my,jn,jl,ag,sp,oc,nv,dc}
\SetStringLoop{abday#1name}{lu,ma,mi,ju,vi,sa,do}
```

#1 is replaced by the roman numeral.

\SetCase [*<map-list>*]{*<toupper-code>*}{*<tolower-code>*}

Sets globally code to be executed at `\MakeUppercase` and `\MakeLowercase`. The code would be typically things like `\let\BB\bb` and `\uccode` or `\lccode` (although for the reasons explained above, changes in lc/uc codes may not work). A *<map-list>* is a series of macros using the internal format of `\@uclclist` (eg, `\bb\BB\cc\CC`). The mandatory arguments take precedence over the optional one. This command, unlike `\SetString`, is executed always (even without strings), and it is intended for minor readjustments only. For example, as T1 is the default case mapping in L^AT_EX, we could set for Turkish:

```
\StartBabelCommands{turkish}{}[ot1enc, fontenc=OT1]
\SetCase
{\uccode"10=`I\relax}
{\lccode`I="10\relax}

\StartBabelCommands{turkish}{}[unicode, fontenc=TU EU1 EU2, charset=utf8]
\SetCase
{\uccode`i=`İ\relax
 \uccode`ı=`I\relax}
{\lccode`İ=`i\relax
 \lccode`I=`ı\relax}

\StartBabelCommands{turkish}{}
\SetCase
{\uccode`i="9D\relax
 \uccode"19=`I\relax}
{\lccode"9D=`i\relax
 \lccode`I="19\relax}

\EndBabelCommands
```

(Note the mapping for OT1 is not complete.)

\SetHyphenMap {*<to-lower-macros>*}

New 3.9g Case mapping serves in T_EX for two unrelated purposes: case transforms (upper/lower) and hyphenation. `\SetCase` handles the former, while hyphenation is handled by `\SetHyphenMap` and controlled with the package option `hyphenmap`. So, even if internally they are based on the same T_EX primitive (`\lccode`), babel sets them separately.

There are three helper macros to be used inside `\SetHyphenMap`:

- `\BabelLower{<uccode>}{<lccode>}` is similar to `\lccode` but it's ignored if the char has been set and saves the original lccode to restore it when switching the language (except with `hyphenmap=first`).
- `\BabelLowerMM{<uccode-from>}{<uccode-to>}{<step>}{<lccode-from>}` loops through the given uppercase codes, using the step, and assigns them the lccode, which is also increased (MM stands for *many-to-many*).
- `\BabelLowerMO{<uccode-from>}{<uccode-to>}{<step>}{<lccode>}` loops through the given uppercase codes, using the step, and assigns them the lccode, which is fixed (MO stands for *many-to-one*).

An example is (which is redundant, because these assignments are done by both `luatex` and `xetex`):

```
\SetHyphenMap{\BabelLowerMM{"100"}{"11F"}{2}{101}}
```

This macro is not intended to fix wrong mappings done by Unicode (which are the default in both `xetex` and `luatex`) – if an assignment is wrong, fix it directly.

4 Changes

4.1 Changes in babel version 3.9

Most of changes in version 3.9 are related to bugs, either to fix them (there were lots), or to provide some alternatives. Even new features like `\babelhyphen` are intended to solve a certain problem (in this case, the lacking of a uniform syntax and behaviour for shorthands across languages). These changes are described in this manual in the corresponding place. A selective list follows:

- `\select@language` did not set `\language`. This meant the language in force when auxiliary files were loaded was the one used in, for example, shorthands – if the language was `german`, a `\select@language{spanish}` had no effect.
- `\foreignlanguage` and `otherlanguage*` messed up `\extras<language>`. Scripts, encodings and many other things were not switched correctly.
- The `:ENC` mechanism for hyphenation patterns used the encoding of the *previous* language, not that of the language being selected.
- `'` (with `activeacute`) had the original value when writing to an auxiliary file, and things like an infinite loop could happen. It worked incorrectly with `^` (if activated) and also if deactivated.
- Active chars were not reset at the end of language options, and that led to incompatibilities between languages.
- `\textormath` raised an error with a conditional.
- `\aliasshorthand` didn't work (or only in a few and very specific cases).
- `\l@english` was defined incorrectly (using `\let` instead of `\chardef`).
- `ldf` files not bundled with `babel` were not recognized when called as global options.

4.2 Changes in babel version 3.7

In babel version 3.7 a number of bugs that were found in version 3.6 are fixed. Also a number of changes and additions have occurred:

- Shorthands are expandable again. The disadvantage is that one has to type '{ }a when the acute accent is used as a shorthand character. The advantage is that a number of other problems (such as the breaking of ligatures, etc.) have vanished.
- Two new commands, `\shorthandon` and `\shorthandoff` have been introduced to enable to temporarily switch off one or more shorthands.
- Support for typesetting Hebrew (and potential support for typesetting other right-to-left written languages) is now available thanks to Rama Porrat and Boris Lavva.
- A language attribute has been added to the `\mark . . .` commands in order to make sure that a Greek header line comes out right on the last page before a language switch.
- Hyphenation pattern files are now read *inside a group*; therefore any changes a pattern file needs to make to lowercase codes, uppercase codes, and category codes are kept local to that group. If they are needed for the language, these changes will need to be repeated and stored in `\extras . . .`
- The concept of language attributes is introduced. It is intended to give the user some control over the features a language-definition file provides. Its first use is for the Greek language, where the user can choose the πολυτονικό (“polytonikó” or multi-accented) Greek way of typesetting texts.
- The environment `hyphenrules` is introduced.
- The syntax of the file `language.dat` has been extended to allow (optionally) specifying the font encoding to be used while processing the patterns file.
- The command `\providehyphenmins` should now be used in language definition files in order to be able to keep any settings provided by the pattern file.

Part II

The code

babel is being developed incrementally, which means parts of the code are under development and therefore incomplete. Only documented features are considered complete. In other words, use babel only as documented (except, of course, if you want to explore and test them – you can post suggestions about multilingual issues to kadingira@tug.org on <http://tug.org/mailman/listinfo/kadingira>).

5 Identification and loading of required files

Code documentation is still under revision.

The babel package after unpacking consists of the following files:

switch.def defines macros to set and switch languages.

babel.def defines the rest of macros. It has two parts: a generic one and a second one only for LaTeX.

babel.sty is the \LaTeX package, which set options and load language styles.

plain.def defines some \LaTeX macros required by `babel.def` and provides a few tools for Plain.

hyphen.cfg is the file to be used when generating the formats to load hyphenation patterns. By default it also loads `switch.def`.

The `babel` installer extends `docstrip` with a few “pseudo-guards” to set “variables” used at installation time. They are used with `<@name@>` at the appropriated places in the source code and shown below with `<<name>>`. That brings a little bit of literate programming.

```
1 <<version=3.17.1171>>
2 <<date=2018/01/29>>
```

6 Tools

Do not use the following macros in ldf files. They may change in the future. This applies mainly to those recently added for replacing, trimming and looping. The older ones, like `\bbl@afterfi`, will not change.

We define some basic macros which just make the code cleaner. `\bbl@add` is now used internally instead of `\addto` because of the unpredictable behaviour of the latter. Used in `babel.def` and in `babel.sty`, which means in \LaTeX is executed twice, but we need them when defining options and `babel.def` cannot be load until options have been defined. This does not hurt, but should be fixed somehow.

```
3 <<*Basic macros>> ≡
4 \bbl@trace{Basic macros}
5 \def\bbl@stripslash{\expandafter\@gobble\string}
6 \def\bbl@add#1#2{%
7   \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@stripslash#1}%
8     {\def#1{#2}}%
9     {\expandafter\def\expandafter#1\expandafter{#1#2}}
10 \def\bbl@xin@{\@expandtwoargs\in@}
11 \def\bbl@csarg#1#2{\expandafter#1\csname bbl@#2\endcsname}%
12 \def\bbl@cs#1{\csname bbl@#1\endcsname}
13 \def\bbl@loop#1#2#3{\bbl@loop#1{#3}#2,\@nnil,}
14 \def\bbl@loopx#1#2{\expandafter\bbl@loop\expandafter#1\expandafter{#2}}
15 \def\bbl@loop#1#2#3,{%
16   \ifx\@nnil#3\relax\else
17     \def#1{#3}#2\bbl@afterfi\bbl@loop#1{#2}%
18   \fi}
19 \def\bbl@for#1#2#3{\bbl@loopx#1{#2}{\ifx#1\@empty\else#3\fi}}
```

`\bbl@add@list` This internal macro adds its second argument to a comma separated list in its first argument. When the list is not defined yet (or empty), it will be initiated. It presumes expandable character strings.

```
20 \def\bbl@add@list#1#2{%
21   \edef#1{%
22     \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@stripslash#1}%
23       {}%
24       {\ifx#1\@empty\else#1,\fi}%
25     #2}}
```

`\bbl@afterelse` `\bbl@afterfi` Because the code that is used in the handling of active characters may need to look ahead, we take extra care to ‘throw’ it over the `\else` and `\fi` parts of an `\if`-statement²⁹. These macros will break if another `\if... \fi` statement appears in one of the arguments and it is not enclosed in braces.

²⁹This code is based on code presented in TUGboat vol. 12, no2, June 1991 in “An expansion Power Lemma” by Sonja Maus.

```

26 \long\def\bbl@afterelse#1\else#2\fi{\fi#1}
27 \long\def\bbl@afterfi#1\fi{\fi#1}

```

`\bbl@trim` The following piece of code is stolen (with some changes) from `keyval`, by David Carlisle. It defines two macros: `\bbl@trim` and `\bbl@trim@def`. The first one strips the leading and trailing spaces from the second argument and then applies the first argument (a macro, `\toks@` and the like). The second one, as its name suggests, defines the first argument as the stripped second argument.

```

28 \def\bbl@tempa#1{%
29   \long\def\bbl@trim##1##2{%
30     \futurelet\bbl@trim@a\bbl@trim@c##2\@nil\@nil#1\@nil\relax{##1}}%
31   \def\bbl@trim@c{%
32     \ifx\bbl@trim@a\@sptoken
33       \expandafter\bbl@trim@b
34     \else
35       \expandafter\bbl@trim@b\expandafter#1%
36     \fi}%
37   \long\def\bbl@trim@b##1 \@nil{\bbl@trim@i##1}}
38 \bbl@tempa{ }
39 \long\def\bbl@trim@i#1\@nil#2\relax#3{#3{#1}}
40 \long\def\bbl@trim@def#1{\bbl@trim{\def#1}}

```

`\bbl@ifunset` To check if a macro is defined, we create a new macro, which does the same as `\ifundefined`. However, in an ϵ -tex engine, it is based on `\ifcsname`, which is more efficient, and do not waste memory.

```

41 \def\bbl@ifunset#1{%
42   \expandafter\ifx\csname#1\endcsname\relax
43     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
44   \else
45     \expandafter\@secondoftwo
46   \fi}
47 \bbl@ifunset{ifcsname}%
48 {}%
49 {\def\bbl@ifunset#1{%
50   \ifcsname#1\endcsname
51     \expandafter\ifx\csname#1\endcsname\relax
52       \bbl@afterelse\expandafter\@firstoftwo
53     \else
54       \bbl@afterfi\expandafter\@secondoftwo
55     \fi
56   \else
57     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
58   \fi}}

```

`\bbl@ifblank` A tool from `url`, by Donald Arseneau, which tests if a string is empty or space.

```

59 \def\bbl@ifblank#1{%
60   \bbl@ifblank@i#1\@nil\@nil\@secondoftwo\@firstoftwo\@nil}
61 \long\def\bbl@ifblank@i#1#2\@nil#3#4#5\@nil{#4}

```

For each element in the comma separated `<key>=<value>` list, execute `<code>` with `#1` and `#2` as the key and the value of current item (trimmed). In addition, the item is passed verbatim as `#3`. With the `<key>` alone, it passes `\@empty` (ie, the macro thus named, not an empty argument, which is what you get with `<key>=` and no value).

```

62 \def\bbl@forkv#1#2{%
63   \def\bbl@kvcmd##1##2##3{#2}%
64   \bbl@kvnext#1,\@nil,}
65 \def\bbl@kvnext#1,{%

```

```

66 \ifx\@nil#1\relax\else
67 \bbl@ifblank{#1}{\bbl@forkv@eq#1=@empty=@nil{#1}}%
68 \expandafter\bbl@kvnext
69 \fi}
70 \def\bbl@forkv@eq#1=#2=#3\@nil#4{%
71 \bbl@trim@def\bbl@forkv@a{#1}%
72 \bbl@trim{\expandafter\bbl@kvcmd\expandafter{\bbl@forkv@a}}{#2}{#4}}

```

A *for* loop. Each item (trimmed), is #1. It cannot be nested (it's doable, but we don't need it).

```

73 \def\bbl@vforeach#1#2{%
74 \def\bbl@forcmd##1{#2}%
75 \bbl@fornext#1,\@nil,}
76 \def\bbl@fornext#1,{%
77 \ifx\@nil#1\relax\else
78 \bbl@ifblank{#1}{\bbl@trim\bbl@forcmd{#1}}%
79 \expandafter\bbl@fornext
80 \fi}
81 \def\bbl@foreach#1{\expandafter\bbl@vforeach\expandafter{#1}}

```

\bbl@replace

```

82 \def\bbl@replace#1#2#3{% in #1 -> repl #2 by #3
83 \toks@{}}%
84 \def\bbl@replace@aux##1#2##2#2{%
85 \ifx\bbl@nil##2%
86 \toks@\expandafter{\the\toks@##1}%
87 \else
88 \toks@\expandafter{\the\toks@##1#3}%
89 \bbl@afterfi
90 \bbl@replace@aux##2#2%
91 \fi}%
92 \expandafter\bbl@replace@aux#1#2\bbl@nil#2%
93 \edef#1{\the\toks@}}

```

\bbl@exp Now, just syntactical sugar, but it makes partial expansion of some code a lot more simple and readable. Here \ stands for \noexpand and \<. .> for \noexpand applied to a built macro name (the latter does not define the macro if undefined to \relax, because it is created locally). The result may be followed by extra arguments, if necessary.

```

94 \def\bbl@exp#1{%
95 \begingroup
96 \let\ \noexpand
97 \def\<##1>{\expandafter\noexpand\csname##1\endcsname}%
98 \edef\bbl@exp@aux{\endgroup#1}%
99 \bbl@exp@aux}

```

Two further tools. \bbl@samestring first expand its arguments and then compare their expansion (sanitized, so that the catcodes do not matter). \bbl@engine takes the following values: 0 is pdfTeX, 1 is luatex, and 2 is xetex. You may use the latter in your language style if you want.

```

100 \def\bbl@ifsamestring#1#2{%
101 \begingroup
102 \protected@edef\bbl@tempb{#1}%
103 \edef\bbl@tempb{\expandafter\strip@prefix\meaning\bbl@tempb}%
104 \protected@edef\bbl@tempc{#2}%
105 \edef\bbl@tempc{\expandafter\strip@prefix\meaning\bbl@tempc}%
106 \ifx\bbl@tempb\bbl@tempc
107 \aftergroup\@firstoftwo
108 \else
109 \aftergroup\@secondoftwo

```

```

110 \fi
111 \endgroup}
112 \chardef\bbl@engine=%
113 \ifx\directlua\undefined
114 \ifx\XeTeXinputencoding\undefined
115 \z@
116 \else
117 \tw@
118 \fi
119 \else
120 \@ne
121 \fi
122 <</Basic macros>>

```

Some files identify themselves with a \LaTeX macro. The following code is placed before them to define (and then undefine) if not in \LaTeX .

```

123 <<*Make sure ProvidesFile is defined>> ≡
124 \ifx\ProvidesFile\undefined
125 \def\ProvidesFile#1[#2 #3 #4]{%
126 \wlog{File: #1 #4 #3 <#2>}%
127 \let\ProvidesFile\undefined}
128 \fi
129 <</Make sure ProvidesFile is defined>>

```

The following code is used in `babel.sty` and `babel.def`, and loads (only once) the data in `language.dat`.

```

130 <<*Load patterns in luatex>> ≡
131 \ifx\directlua\undefined\else
132 \ifx\bbl@luapatterns\undefined
133 \input luababel.def
134 \fi
135 \fi
136 <</Load patterns in luatex>>

```

The following code is used in `babel.def` and `switch.def`.

```

137 <<*Load macros for plain if not LaTeX>> ≡
138 \ifx\AtBeginDocument\undefined
139 \input plain.def\relax
140 \fi
141 <</Load macros for plain if not LaTeX>>

```

6.1 Multiple languages

`\language` Plain \TeX version 3.0 provides the primitive `\language` that is used to store the current language. When used with a pre-3.0 version this function has to be implemented by allocating a counter. The following block is used in `switch.def` and `hyphen.cfg`; the latter may seem redundant, but remember `babel` doesn't require loading `switch.def` in the format.

```

142 <<*Define core switching macros>> ≡
143 \ifx\language\undefined
144 \csname newcount\endcsname\language
145 \fi
146 <</Define core switching macros>>

```

`\last@language` Another counter is used to store the last language defined. For pre-3.0 formats an extra counter has to be allocated.

`\addlanguage` To add languages to T_EX's memory plain T_EX version 3.0 supplies `\newlanguage`, in a pre-3.0 environment a similar macro has to be provided. For both cases a new macro is defined here, because the original `\newlanguage` was defined to be `\outer`. For a format based on plain version 2.x, the definition of `\newlanguage` can not be copied because `\count 19` is used for other purposes in these formats. Therefore `\addlanguage` is defined using a definition based on the macros used to define `\newlanguage` in plain T_EX version 3.0.

For formats based on plain version 3.0 the definition of `\newlanguage` can be simply copied, removing `\outer`. Plain T_EX version 3.0 uses `\count 19` for this purpose.

```

147 <<*Define core switching macros>> ≡
148 \ifx\newlanguage\undefined
149   \csname newcount\endcsname\last@language
150   \def\addlanguage#1{%
151     \global\advance\last@language\@ne
152     \ifnum\last@language<\@ccclvi
153       \else
154         \errmessage{No room for a new \string\language!}%
155       \fi
156       \global\chardef#1\last@language
157       \wlog{\string#1 = \string\language\the\last@language}}
158   \else
159     \countdef\last@language=19
160     \def\addlanguage{\alloc@9\language\chardef\@ccclvi}
161   \fi
162 <</Define core switching macros>>

```

Now we make sure all required files are loaded. When the command `\AtBeginDocument` doesn't exist we assume that we are dealing with a plain-based format or L^AT_EX 2.09. In that case the file `plain.def` is needed (which also defines `\AtBeginDocument`, and therefore it is not loaded twice). We need the first part when the format is created, and `\orig@dump` is used as a flag. Otherwise, we need to use the second part, so `\orig@dump` is not defined (`plain.def` undefines it).

Check if the current version of `switch.def` has been previously loaded (mainly, `hyphen.cfg`). If not, load it now. We cannot load `babel.def` here because we first need to declare and process the package options.

7 The Package File (L^AT_EX, `babel.sty`)

In order to make use of the features of L^AT_EX 2_ε, the `babel` system contains a package file, `babel.sty`. This file is loaded by the `\usepackage` command and defines all the language options whose name is different from that of the `.ldf` file (like variant spellings). It also takes care of a number of compatibility issues with other packages and defines a few additional package options.

Apart from all the language options below we also have a few options that influence the behaviour of language definition files.

Many of the following options don't do anything themselves, they are just defined in order to make it possible for `babel` and language definition files to check if one of them was specified by the user.

7.1 base

The first option to be processed is `base`, which set the hyphenation patterns then resets `ver@babel.sty` so that L^AT_EX forgets about the first loading. After `switch.def` has been loaded (above) and `\AfterBabelLanguage` defined, exits.

```

163 (*package)
164 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[2005/12/01]
165 \ProvidesPackage{babel}[\langle date \rangle \langle version \rangle The Babel package]
166 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{debug}
167   {\providecommand\bbl@trace[1]{\message{^^J[ #1 ]}}}%
168   \let\bbl@debug\@firstofone}
169   {\providecommand\bbl@trace[1]{}%
170   \let\bbl@debug\@gobble}
171 \ifx\bbl@switchflag\undefined % Prevent double input
172   \let\bbl@switchflag\relax
173   \input switch.def\relax
174 \fi
175 \langle Load patterns in luatex \rangle
176 \langle Basic macros \rangle
177 \def\AfterBabelLanguage#1{%
178   \global\expandafter\bbl@add\csname#1.ldf-h@@k\endcsname}%

```

If the format created a list of loaded languages (in `\bbl@languages`), get the name of the 0-th to show the actual language used.

```

179 \ifx\bbl@languages\undefined\else
180   \begingroup
181     \catcode\^^I=12
182     \@ifpackagewith{babel}{showlanguages}{%
183       \begingroup
184         \def\bbl@elt#1#2#3#4{\wlog{#2^^I#1^^I#3^^I#4}}%
185         \wlog{<*languages>}%
186         \bbl@languages
187         \wlog{</languages>}%
188       \endgroup}{%
189     \endgroup
190     \def\bbl@elt#1#2#3#4{%
191       \ifnum#2=\z@
192         \gdef\bbl@nulllanguage{#1}%
193         \def\bbl@elt##1##2##3##4{}%
194       \fi}%
195     \bbl@languages
196 \fi
197 \ifodd\bbl@engine
198   \@ifpackagewith{babel}{bidi=basic-r}{% must go before any \DeclareOption
199     \let\bbl@beforeforeign\leavevmode
200     \AtEndOfPackage{\EnableBabelHook{babel-bidi}}%
201     \RequirePackage{luatexbase}%
202     \directlua{
203       require('babel-bidi.lua')
204       require('babel-bidi-basic-r.lua')
205       luatexbase.add_to_callback('pre_linebreak_filter',
206         Babel.pre_otfload,
207         'Babel.pre_otfload',
208       luatexbase.priority_in_callback('pre_linebreak_filter',
209         'luaotfload.node_processor') or nil)
210       luatexbase.add_to_callback('hpack_filter',
211         Babel.pre_otfload,
212         'Babel.pre_otfload',
213       luatexbase.priority_in_callback('hpack_filter',
214         'luaotfload.node_processor') or nil)}}{}
215 \fi

```

Now the base option. With it we can define (and load, with `luatex`) hyphenation patterns, even if we are not interested in the rest of `babel`. Useful for old versions of `polyglossia`, too.

```

216 \bbl@trace{Defining option 'base'}
217 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{base}{%
218   \ifx\directlua\@undefined
219     \DeclareOption*{\bbl@patterns{\CurrentOption}}%
220   \else
221     \DeclareOption*{\bbl@patterns@lua{\CurrentOption}}%
222   \fi
223   \DeclareOption{base}{}%
224   \DeclareOption{showlanguages}{}%
225   \ProcessOptions
226   \global\expandafter\let\csname opt@babel.sty\endcsname\relax
227   \global\expandafter\let\csname ver@babel.sty\endcsname\relax
228   \global\let@ifl@ter@@\ifl@ter
229   \def@ifl@ter#1#2#3#4#5{\global\let@ifl@ter@ifl@ter@@}%
230   \endinput}{}%

```

7.2 key=value options and other general option

The following macros extract language modifiers, and only real package options are kept in the option list. Modifiers are saved and assigned to `\BabelModifiers` at `\bbl@load@language`; when no modifiers have been given, the former is `\relax`. How modifiers are handled are left to language styles; they can use `\in@`, loop them with `\@for` or `load keyval`, for example.

```

231 \bbl@trace{key=value and another general options}
232 \bbl@csarg\let{tempa\expandafter}\csname opt@babel.sty\endcsname
233 \def\bbl@tempb#1.#2{%
234   #1\ifx\@empty#2\else,\bbl@afterfi\bbl@tempb#2\fi}%
235 \def\bbl@tempd#1.#2\@nnil{%
236   \ifx\@empty#2%
237     \edef\bbl@tempc{\ifx\bbl@tempc\@empty\else\bbl@tempc,\fi#1}%
238   \else
239     \in@{=}{#1}\fin@
240     \edef\bbl@tempc{\ifx\bbl@tempc\@empty\else\bbl@tempc,\fi#1.#2}%
241   \else
242     \edef\bbl@tempc{\ifx\bbl@tempc\@empty\else\bbl@tempc,\fi#1}%
243     \bbl@csarg\edef{mod@#1}{\bbl@tempb#2}%
244   \fi
245 \fi}
246 \let\bbl@tempc\@empty
247 \bbl@foreach\bbl@tempa{\bbl@tempd#1.\@empty\@nnil}
248 \expandafter\let\csname opt@babel.sty\endcsname\bbl@tempc

```

The next option tells babel to leave shorthand characters active at the end of processing the package. This is *not* the default as it can cause problems with other packages, but for those who want to use the shorthand characters in the preamble of their documents this can help.

```

249 \DeclareOption{KeepShorthandsActive}{}
250 \DeclareOption{activeacute}{}
251 \DeclareOption{activegrave}{}
252 \DeclareOption{debug}{}
253 \DeclareOption{noconfigs}{}
254 \DeclareOption{showlanguages}{}
255 \DeclareOption{silent}{}
256 \DeclareOption{shorthands=off}{\bbl@tempa shorthands=\bbl@tempa}
257 <<More package options>>

```

Handling of package options is done in three passes. (I [JBL] am not very happy with the idea, anyway.) The first one processes options which has been declared above or follow the

syntax <key>=<value>, the second one loads the requested languages, except the main one if set with the key main, and the third one loads the latter. First, we “flag” valid keys with a nil value.

```
258 \let\bbl@opt@shorthands\@nnil
259 \let\bbl@opt@config\@nnil
260 \let\bbl@opt@main\@nnil
261 \let\bbl@opt@headfoot\@nnil
262 \let\bbl@opt@layout\@nnil
```

The following tool is defined temporarily to store the values of options.

```
263 \def\bbl@tempa#1=#2\bbl@tempa{%
264   \bbl@csarg\ifx{opt@#1}\@nnil
265   \bbl@csarg\edef{opt@#1}{#2}%
266   \else
267   \bbl@error{%
268     Bad option `#1=#2'. Either you have misspelled the\\%
269     key or there is a previous setting of `#1'}{%
270     Valid keys are `shorthands', `config', `strings', `main',\\%
271     `headfoot', `safe', `math', among others.}
272   \fi}
```

Now the option list is processed, taking into account only currently declared options (including those declared with a =), and <key>=<value> options (the former take precedence). Unrecognized options are saved in \bbl@language@opts, because they are language options.

```
273 \let\bbl@language@opts\@empty
274 \DeclareOption*{%
275   \bbl@xin@{\string=}{\CurrentOption}%
276   \ifin@
277   \expandafter\bbl@tempa\CurrentOption\bbl@tempa
278   \else
279   \bbl@add@list\bbl@language@opts{\CurrentOption}%
280   \fi}
```

Now we finish the first pass (and start over).

```
281 \ProcessOptions*
```

7.3 Conditional loading of shorthands

If there is no shorthands=<chars>, the original babel macros are left untouched, but if there is, these macros are wrapped (in babel.def) to define only those given. A bit of optimization: if there is no shorthands=, then \bbl@ifshorthands is always true, and it is always false if shorthands is empty. Also, some code makes sense only with shorthands=...

```
282 \bbl@trace{Conditional loading of shorthands}
283 \def\bbl@sh@string#1{%
284   \ifx#1\@empty\else
285     \ifx#1t\string~%
286     \else\ifx#1c\string,%
287     \else\string#1%
288     \fi\fi
289     \expandafter\bbl@sh@string
290   \fi}
291 \ifx\bbl@opt@shorthands\@nnil
292   \def\bbl@ifshorthand#1#2#3{#2}%
293 \else\ifx\bbl@opt@shorthands\@empty
294   \def\bbl@ifshorthand#1#2#3{#3}%
295 \else
```


The following macro tests if a shorthand is one of the allowed ones.

```

296 \def\bbl@ifshorthand#1{%
297   \bbl@xin@{\string#1}{\bbl@opt@shorthands}%
298   \ifin@
299     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
300   \else
301     \expandafter\@secondoftwo
302   \fi}

```

We make sure all chars in the string are ‘other’, with the help of an auxiliary macro defined above (which also zaps spaces).

```

303 \edef\bbl@opt@shorthands{%
304   \expandafter\bbl@sh@string\bbl@opt@shorthands\@empty}%

```

The following is ignored with shorthands=off, since it is intended to take some additional actions for certain chars.

```

305 \bbl@ifshorthand{'}%
306   {\PassOptionsToPackage{activeacute}{babel}}{}
307 \bbl@ifshorthand{`}%
308   {\PassOptionsToPackage{activegrave}{babel}}{}
309 \fi\fi

```

With headfoot=lang we can set the language used in heads/foots. For example, in babel/3796 just adds headfoot=english. It misuses \@resetactivechars but seems to work.

```

310 \ifx\bbl@opt@headfoot\@nnil\else
311   \g@addto@macro\@resetactivechars{%
312     \set@typeset@protect
313     \expandafter\select@language@x\expandafter{\bbl@opt@headfoot}%
314     \let\protect\noexpand}
315 \fi

```

For the option safe we use a different approach – \bbl@opt@safe says which macros are redefined (B for bibs and R for refs). By default, both are set.

```

316 \ifx\bbl@opt@safe\@undefined
317   \def\bbl@opt@safe{BR}
318 \fi
319 \ifx\bbl@opt@main\@nnil\else
320   \edef\bbl@language@opts{%
321     \ifx\bbl@language@opts\@empty\else\bbl@language@opts,\fi
322     \bbl@opt@main}
323 \fi

```

For layout an auxiliary macro is provided, available for packages and language styles.

```

324 \bbl@trace{Defining IfBabelLayout}
325 \ifx\bbl@opt@layout\@nnil
326   \newcommand\IfBabelLayout[3]{#3}%
327 \else
328   \newcommand\IfBabelLayout[1]{%
329     \@expandtwoargs\in@{.#1.}{.\bbl@opt@layout.}%
330     \ifin@
331       \expandafter\@firstoftwo
332     \else
333       \expandafter\@secondoftwo
334     \fi}
335 \fi

```

7.4 Language options

Languages are loaded when processing the corresponding option *except* if a main language has been set. In such a case, it is not loaded until all options has been processed. The following macro inputs the ldf file and does some additional checks (\input works, too, but possible errors are not caught).

```
336 \bbl@trace{Language options}
337 \let\bbl@afterlang\relax
338 \let\BabelModifiers\relax
339 \let\bbl@loaded@empty
340 \def\bbl@load@language#1{%
341   \InputIfFileExists{#1.ldf}%
342   {\edef\bbl@loaded{\CurrentOption
343     \ifx\bbl@loaded\empty\else,\bbl@loaded\fi}%
344     \expandafter\let\expandafter\bbl@afterlang
345       \csname\CurrentOption.ldf-h@@k\endcsname
346     \expandafter\let\expandafter\BabelModifiers
347       \csname bbl@mod@\CurrentOption\endcsname}%
348   {\bbl@error{%
349     Unknown option '\CurrentOption'. Either you misspelled it\\%
350     or the language definition file \CurrentOption.ldf was not found}{%
351     Valid options are: shorthands=, KeepShorthandsActive,\\%
352     activeacute, activegrave, noconfigs, safe=, main=, math=\\%
353     headfoot=, strings=, config=, hyphenmap=, or a language name.}}}
```

Now, we set language options whose names are different from ldf files.

```
354 \def\bbl@try@load@lang#1#2#3{%
355   \IfFileExists{\CurrentOption.ldf}%
356   {\bbl@load@language{\CurrentOption}}%
357   {#1\bbl@load@language{#2}#3}}
358 \DeclareOption{afrikaans}{\bbl@try@load@lang{}{dutch}}
359 \DeclareOption{brazil}{\bbl@try@load@lang{}{portuges}}
360 \DeclareOption{brazilian}{\bbl@try@load@lang{}{portuges}}
361 \DeclareOption{hebrew}{%
362   \input{rlbabel.def}%
363   \bbl@load@language{hebrew}}
364 \DeclareOption{hungarian}{\bbl@try@load@lang{}{magyar}}
365 \DeclareOption{lowersorbian}{\bbl@try@load@lang{}{lsorbian}}
366 \DeclareOption{nynorsk}{\bbl@try@load@lang{}{norsk}}
367 \DeclareOption{polutonikogreek}{%
368   \bbl@try@load@lang{}{greek}{\languageattribute{greek}{polutoniko}}}
369 \DeclareOption{portuguese}{\bbl@try@load@lang{}{portuges}}
370 \DeclareOption{russian}{\bbl@try@load@lang{}{russianb}}
371 \DeclareOption{ukrainian}{\bbl@try@load@lang{}{ukraineb}}
372 \DeclareOption{uppersorbian}{\bbl@try@load@lang{}{usorbian}}
```

Another way to extend the list of ‘known’ options for babel was to create the file `bblopts.cfg` in which one can add option declarations. However, this mechanism is deprecated – if you want an alternative name for a language, just create a new .ldf file loading the actual one. You can also set the name of the file with the package option `config=<name>`, which will load `<name>.cfg` instead.

```
373 \ifx\bbl@opt@config\@nnil
374   \@ifpackagewith{babel}{noconfigs}}%
375   {\InputIfFileExists{bblopts.cfg}%
376     {\typeout{*****^J%
377               * Local config file bblopts.cfg used^^J%
378               *}}%
379     {}}%
```

```

380 \else
381   \InputIfFileExists{\bbl@opt@config.cfg}%
382   {\typeout{*****^J%
383     * Local config file \bbl@opt@config.cfg used^^J%
384     *}}%
385   {\bbl@error{%
386     Local config file '\bbl@opt@config.cfg' not found}{%
387     Perhaps you misspelled it.}}%
388 \fi

```

Recognizing global options in packages not having a closed set of them is not trivial, as for them to be processed they must be defined explicitly. So, package options not yet taken into account and stored in `bbl@language@opts` are assumed to be languages (note this list also contains the language given with `main`). If not declared above, the name of the option and the file are the same.

```

389 \bbl@for\bbl@tempa\bbl@language@opts{%
390   \bbl@ifunset{ds@\bbl@tempa}%
391   {\edef\bbl@tempb{%
392     \noexpand\DeclareOption
393     {\bbl@tempa}%
394     {\noexpand\bbl@load@language{\bbl@tempa}}}%
395     \bbl@tempb}%
396   \@empty}

```

Now, we make sure an option is explicitly declared for any language set as global option, by checking if an `ldf` exists. The previous step was, in fact, somewhat redundant, but that way we minimize accessing the file system just to see if the option could be a language.

```

397 \bbl@foreach\@classoptionslist{%
398   \bbl@ifunset{ds@#1}%
399   {\IfFileExists{#1.ldf}%
400     {\DeclareOption{#1}{\bbl@load@language{#1}}}%
401     {}}%
402   {}}

```

If a main language has been set, store it for the third pass.

```

403 \ifx\bbl@opt@main\@nnil\else
404   \expandafter
405   \let\expandafter\bbl@loadmain\csname ds@\bbl@opt@main\endcsname
406   \DeclareOption{\bbl@opt@main}{}
407 \fi

```

And we are done, because all options for this pass has been declared. Those already processed in the first pass are just ignored.

The options have to be processed in the order in which the user specified them (except, of course, global options, which \LaTeX processes before):

```

408 \def\AfterBabelLanguage#1{%
409   \bbl@ifsamestring\CurrentOption{#1}{\global\bbl@add\bbl@afterlang}{}}
410 \DeclareOption*{}
411 \ProcessOptions*

```

This finished the second pass. Now the third one begins, which loads the main language set with the key `main`. A warning is raised if the main language is not the same as the last named one, or if the value of the key `main` is not a language. Then execute directly the option (because it could be used only in `main`). After loading all languages, we deactivate `\AfterBabelLanguage`.

```

412 \ifx\bbl@opt@main\@nnil
413   \edef\bbl@tempa{\@classoptionslist,\bbl@language@opts}
414   \let\bbl@tempc\@empty

```

```

415 \bbl@for\bbl@tempb\bbl@tempa{%
416   \bbl@xin@{,\bbl@tempb,}{,\bbl@loaded,}%
417   \ifin@ \edef\bbl@tempc{\bbl@tempb}\fi}
418 \def\bbl@tempa#1,#2\@nnil{\def\bbl@tempb{#1}}
419 \expandafter\bbl@tempa\bbl@loaded,\@nnil
420 \ifx\bbl@tempb\bbl@tempc\else
421   \bbl@warning{%
422     Last declared language option is '\bbl@tempc',\%
423     but the last processed one was '\bbl@tempb'.\%
424     The main language cannot be set as both a global\%
425     and a package option. Use 'main=\bbl@tempc' as\%
426     option. Reported}%
427 \fi
428 \else
429   \DeclareOption{\bbl@opt@main}{\bbl@loadmain}
430   \ExecuteOptions{\bbl@opt@main}
431   \DeclareOption*{}
432   \ProcessOptions*
433 \fi
434 \def\AfterBabelLanguage{%
435   \bbl@error
436   {Too late for \string\AfterBabelLanguage}%
437   {Languages have been loaded, so I can do nothing}}

```

In order to catch the case where the user forgot to specify a language we check whether `\bbl@main@language`, has become defined. If not, no language has been loaded and an error message is displayed.

```

438 \ifx\bbl@main@language\undefined
439   \bbl@error{%
440     You haven't specified a language option}{%
441     You need to specify a language, either as a global option\%
442     or as an optional argument to the \string\usepackage\space
443     command;\%
444     You shouldn't try to proceed from here, type x to quit.}
445 \fi
446 \</package>

```

8 The kernel of Babel (`babel.def`, `common`)

The kernel of the babel system is stored in either `hyphen.cfg` or `switch.def` and `babel.def`. The file `babel.def` contains most of the code, while `switch.def` defines the language switching commands; both can be read at run time. The file `hyphen.cfg` is a file that can be loaded into the format, which is necessary when you want to be able to switch hyphenation patterns (by default, it also inputs `switch.def`, for “historical reasons”, but it is not necessary). When `babel.def` is loaded it checks if the current version of `switch.def` is in the format; if not, it is loaded. A further file, `babel.sty`, contains \LaTeX -specific stuff. Because plain \TeX users might want to use some of the features of the babel system too, care has to be taken that plain \TeX can process the files. For this reason the current format will have to be checked in a number of places. Some of the code below is common to plain \TeX and \LaTeX , some of it is for the \LaTeX case only.

Plain formats based on `etex` (`etex`, `xetex`, `luatex`) don’t load `hyphen.cfg` but `etex.src`, which follows a different naming convention, so we need to define the babel names. It presumes `language.def` exists and it is the same file used when formats were created.

8.1 Tools

```

447 <{*core}>
448 \ifx\ldf@quit\@undefined
449 \else
450 \expandafter\endinput
451 \fi
452 <<Make sure ProvidesFile is defined>>
453 \ProvidesFile{babel.def}[<<date>>] <<version>> Babel common definitions]
454 <<Load macros for plain if not LaTeX>>

```

The file `babel.def` expects some definitions made in the $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ style file. So, In $\text{\LaTeX} 2.09$ and Plain we must provide at least some predefined values as well some tools to set them (even if not all options are available). There in no package options, and therefore and alternative mechanism is provided. For the moment, only `\babeloptionstrings` and `\babeloptionmath` are provided, which can be defined before loading babel. `\BabelModifiers` can be set too (but not sure it works).

```

455 \ifx\bbl@ifshorthand\@undefined
456 \let\bbl@opt@shorthands\@nnil
457 \def\bbl@ifshorthand#1#2#3{#2}%
458 \let\bbl@language@opts\@empty
459 \ifx\babeloptionstrings\@undefined
460 \let\bbl@opt@strings\@nnil
461 \else
462 \let\bbl@opt@strings\babeloptionstrings
463 \fi
464 \def\BabelStringsDefault{generic}
465 \def\bbl@tempa{normal}
466 \ifx\babeloptionmath\bbl@tempa
467 \def\bbl@mathnormal{\noexpand\textormath}
468 \fi
469 \def\AfterBabelLanguage#1#2{}
470 \ifx\BabelModifiers\@undefined\let\BabelModifiers\relax\fi
471 \let\bbl@afterlang\relax
472 \def\bbl@opt@safe{BR}
473 \ifx\@uclclist\@undefined\let\@uclclist\@empty\fi
474 \ifx\bbl@trace\@undefined\def\bbl@trace#1{}\fi
475 \fi

```

And continue.

```

476 \ifx\bbl@switchflag\@undefined % Prevent double input
477 \let\bbl@switchflag\relax
478 \input switch.def\relax
479 \fi
480 \bbl@trace{Compatibility with language.def}
481 \ifx\bbl@languages\@undefined
482 \ifx\directlua\@undefined
483 \openin1 = language.def
484 \ifeof1
485 \closein1
486 \message{I couldn't find the file language.def}
487 \else
488 \closein1
489 \begingroup
490 \def\addlanguage#1#2#3#4#5{%
491 \expandafter\ifx\csname lang@#1\endcsname\relax\else
492 \global\expandafter\let\csname l@#1\endcsname\expandafter\endcsname
493 \csname lang@#1\endcsname
494 \fi}%
495 \def\uselanguage#1{%
496 \input language.def

```

```

497     \endgroup
498     \fi
499     \fi
500     \chardef\l@english\z@
501 \fi
502 <<Load patterns in luatex>>
503 <<Basic macros>>

```

`\addto` For each language four control sequences have to be defined that control the language-specific definitions. To be able to add something to these macro once they have been defined the macro `\addto` is introduced. It takes two arguments, a *<control sequence>* and \TeX -code to be added to the *<control sequence>*.

If the *<control sequence>* has not been defined before it is defined now. The control sequence could also expand to `\relax`, in which case a circular definition results. The net result is a stack overflow. Otherwise the replacement text for the *<control sequence>* is expanded and stored in a token register, together with the \TeX -code to be added. Finally the *<control sequence>* is redefined, using the contents of the token register.

```

504 \def\addto#1#2{%
505     \ifx#1\undefined
506         \def#1{#2}%
507     \else
508         \ifx#1\relax
509             \def#1{#2}%
510         \else
511             {\toks@\expandafter{#1#2}%
512              \xdef#1{\the\toks@}}%
513         \fi
514     \fi}

```

The macro `\initiate@active@char` takes all the necessary actions to make its argument a shorthand character. The real work is performed once for each character.

```

515 \def\bbl@withactive#1#2{%
516     \begingroup
517     \lccode`~=#2\relax
518     \lowercase{\endgroup#1~}}

```

`\bbl@redefine` To redefine a command, we save the old meaning of the macro. Then we redefine it to call the original macro with the ‘sanitized’ argument. The reason why we do it this way is that we don’t want to redefine the \LaTeX macros completely in case their definitions change (they have changed in the past).

Because we need to redefine a number of commands we define the command `\bbl@redefine` which takes care of this. It creates a new control sequence, `\org@...`

```

519 \def\bbl@redefine#1{%
520     \edef\bbl@tempa{\bbl@stripslash#1}%
521     \expandafter\let\csname org@\bbl@tempa\endcsname#1%
522     \expandafter\def\csname\bbl@tempa\endcsname}

```

This command should only be used in the preamble of the document.

```

523 \@onlypreamble\bbl@redefine

```

`\bbl@redefine@long` This version of `\babel@redefine` can be used to redefine `\long` commands such as `\ifthenelse`.

```

524 \def\bbl@redefine@long#1{%
525     \edef\bbl@tempa{\bbl@stripslash#1}%
526     \expandafter\let\csname org@\bbl@tempa\endcsname#1%
527     \expandafter\long\expandafter\def\csname\bbl@tempa\endcsname}
528 \@onlypreamble\bbl@redefine@long

```

`\bbl@redefineroobust` For commands that are redefined, but which *might* be robust we need a slightly more intelligent macro. A robust command `foo` is defined to expand to `\protect\foo`. So it is necessary to check whether `\foo` exists. The result is that the command that is being redefined is always robust afterwards. Therefore all we need to do now is define `\foo`.

```

529 \def\bbl@redefineroobust#1{%
530   \edef\bbl@tempa{\bbl@stripslash#1}%
531   \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@tempa\space}%
532   {\expandafter\let\csname org@\bbl@tempa\endcsname#1%
533     \bbl@exp{\def\#1{\protect\<\bbl@tempa\space>}}}%
534   {\bbl@exp{\let\<org@\bbl@tempa>\<\bbl@tempa\space>}}}%
535   \@namedef{\bbl@tempa\space}}

```

This command should only be used in the preamble of the document.

```

536 \@onlypreamble\bbl@redefineroobust

```

8.2 Hooks

Note they are loaded in `babel.def`. `switch.def` only provides a “hook” for hooks (with a default value which is a no-op, below). Admittedly, the current implementation is a somewhat simplistic and does very little to catch errors, but it is intended for developers, after all. `\bbl@usehooks` is the commands used by `babel` to execute hooks defined for an event.

```

537 \bbl@trace{Hooks}
538 \def\AddBabelHook#1#2{%
539   \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@hk@#1}{\EnableBabelHook{#1}}}%
540   \def\bbl@tempa##1,#2=##2,##3\@empty{\def\bbl@tempb{##2}}%
541   \expandafter\bbl@tempa\bbl@evargs,#2=,\@empty
542   \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@ev@#1@#2}%
543   {\bbl@csarg\bbl@add{ev@#2}{\bbl@elt{#1}}}%
544   \bbl@csarg\newcommand}%
545   {\bbl@csarg\let{ev@#1@#2}\relax
546   \bbl@csarg\newcommand}%
547   {ev@#1@#2}[\bbl@tempb]}
548 \def\EnableBabelHook#1{\bbl@csarg\let{hk@#1}\@firstofone}
549 \def\DisableBabelHook#1{\bbl@csarg\let{hk@#1}\@gobble}
550 \def\bbl@usehooks#1#2{%
551   \def\bbl@elt##1{%
552     \@nameuse{\bbl@hk@##1}{\@nameuse{\bbl@ev@##1@#1}#2}}%
553   \@nameuse{\bbl@ev@#1}}

```

To ensure forward compatibility, arguments in hooks are set implicitly. So, if a further argument is added in the future, there is no need to change the existing code. Note events intended for `hyphen.cfg` are also loaded (just in case you need them for some reason).

```

554 \def\bbl@evargs{,% don't delete the comma
555   everylanguage=1,loadkernel=1,loadpatterns=1,loadexceptions=1,%
556   adddialect=2,patterns=2,defaultcommands=0,encodedcommands=2,write=0,%
557   beforeextras=0,afterextras=0,stopcommands=0,stringprocess=0,%
558   hyphenation=2,initiateactive=3,afterreset=0,foreign=0,foreign*=0}

```

`\babelensure` The user command just parses the optional argument and creates a new macro named `\bbl@e@<language>`. We register a hook at the `afterextras` event which just executes this macro in a “complete” selection (which, if undefined, is `\relax` and does nothing). This part is somewhat involved because we have to make sure things are expanded the correct number of times.

The macro `\bbl@e@<language>` contains `\bbl@ensure{\include}{\exclude}{\fontenc}`, which in turn loops over the macros names in `\bbl@captionslist`, excluding (with the

help of \in@) those in the exclude list. If the fontenc is given (and not \relax), the \fontencoding is also added. Then we loop over the include list, but if the macro already contains \foreignlanguage, nothing is done. Note this macro (1) is not restricted to the preamble, and (2) changes are local.

```

559 \bbl@trace{Defining babelensure}
560 \newcommand\babelensure[2][{}]{% TODO - revise test files
561   \AddBabelHook{babel-ensure}{afterextras}{%
562     \ifcase\bbl@select@type
563       \@nameuse{\bbl@e@\language}\fi}%
564   \fi}%
565 \begingroup
566   \let\bbl@ens@include\@empty
567   \let\bbl@ens@exclude\@empty
568   \def\bbl@ens@fontenc{\relax}%
569   \def\bbl@tempb##1{%
570     \ifx\@empty##1\else\noexpand##1\expandafter\bbl@tempb\fi}%
571   \edef\bbl@tempa{\bbl@tempb#1\@empty}%
572   \def\bbl@tempb##1=##2\@{\@namedef{\bbl@ens@##1}{##2}}%
573   \bbl@foreach\bbl@tempa{\bbl@tempb##1\@}%
574   \def\bbl@tempc{\bbl@ensure}%
575   \expandafter\bbl@add\expandafter\bbl@tempc\expandafter{%
576     \expandafter{\bbl@ens@include}}%
577   \expandafter\bbl@add\expandafter\bbl@tempc\expandafter{%
578     \expandafter{\bbl@ens@exclude}}%
579   \toks@\expandafter{\bbl@tempc}%
580   \bbl@exp{%
581     \endgroup
582     \def\<bbl@e@#2>{\the\toks@{\bbl@ens@fontenc}}}%
583 \def\bbl@ensure#1#2#3{% 1: include 2: exclude 3: fontenc
584   \def\bbl@tempb##1{% elt for (excluding) \bbl@captionslist list
585     \ifx##1\@empty\else
586       \in@{##1}{#2}%
587       \ifin\else
588         \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@ensure@\language}%
589         {\bbl@exp{%
590           \\\DeclareRobustCommand\<bbl@ensure@\language>[1]{%
591             \\\foreignlanguage{\language}%
592             {\ifx\relax#3\else
593               \\\fontencoding{#3}\selectfont
594             \fi
595             #####1}}}%
596         }%
597         \toks@\expandafter{##1}%
598         \edef##1{%
599           \bbl@csarg\noexpand{ensure@\language}%
600           {\the\toks@}}%
601         \fi
602         \expandafter\bbl@tempb
603       \fi}%
604   \expandafter\bbl@tempb\bbl@captionslist\today\@empty
605   \def\bbl@tempa##1{% elt for include list
606     \ifx##1\@empty\else
607       \bbl@csarg\in@{ensure@\language\expandafter}\expandafter{##1}%
608       \ifin\else
609         \bbl@tempb##1\@empty
610       \fi
611       \expandafter\bbl@tempa
612     \fi}%

```



```

613 \bbl@tempa#1\@empty}
614 \def\bbl@captionslist{%
615 \prefacename\refname\abstractname\bibname\chaptername\appendixname
616 \contentsname\listfigurename\listtablename\indexname\figurename
617 \tablename\partname\enclname\ccname\headtoname\pagename\seename
618 \alsosome\proofname\glossaryname}

```

8.3 Setting up language files

`\LdfInit` The second version of `\LdfInit` macro takes two arguments. The first argument is the name of the language that will be defined in the language definition file; the second argument is either a control sequence or a string from which a control sequence should be constructed. The existence of the control sequence indicates that the file has been processed before.

At the start of processing a language definition file we always check the category code of the at-sign. We make sure that it is a ‘letter’ during the processing of the file. We also save its name as the last called option, even if not loaded.

Another character that needs to have the correct category code during processing of language definition files is the equals sign, ‘=’, because it is sometimes used in constructions with the `\let` primitive. Therefore we store its current catcode and restore it later on.

Now we check whether we should perhaps stop the processing of this file. To do this we first need to check whether the second argument that is passed to `\LdfInit` is a control sequence. We do that by looking at the first token after passing #2 through string. When it is equal to `\@backslashchar` we are dealing with a control sequence which we can compare with `\@undefined`.

If so, we call `\ldf@quit` to set the main language, restore the category code of the @-sign and call `\endinput`

When #2 was *not* a control sequence we construct one and compare it with `\relax`. Finally we check `\originalTeX`.

```

619 \bbl@trace{Macros for setting language files up}
620 \def\bbl@ldfinit{%
621 \let\bbl@screset\@empty
622 \let\BabelStrings\bbl@opt@string
623 \let\BabelOptions\@empty
624 \let\BabelLanguages\relax
625 \ifx\originalTeX\@undefined
626 \let\originalTeX\@empty
627 \else
628 \originalTeX
629 \fi}
630 \def\LdfInit#1#2{%
631 \chardef\atcatcode=\catcode`\@
632 \catcode`\@=11\relax
633 \chardef\eqcatcode=\catcode`\=
634 \catcode`\==12\relax
635 \expandafter\if\expandafter\@backslashchar
636 \expandafter\@car\string#2\@nil
637 \ifx#2\@undefined\else
638 \ldf@quit{#1}%
639 \fi
640 \else
641 \expandafter\ifx\csname#2\endcsname\relax\else
642 \ldf@quit{#1}%
643 \fi
644 \fi
645 \bbl@ldfinit}

```

`\ldf@quit` This macro interrupts the processing of a language definition file.

```
646 \def\ldf@quit#1{%
647   \expandafter\main@language\expandafter{#1}%
648   \catcode`\@=\atcatcode \let\atcatcode\relax
649   \catcode`\==\eqcatcode \let\eqcatcode\relax
650   \endinput}
```

`\ldf@finish` This macro takes one argument. It is the name of the language that was defined in the language definition file.
We load the local configuration file if one is present, we set the main language (taking into account that the argument might be a control sequence that needs to be expanded) and reset the category code of the @-sign.

```
651 \def\bbl@afterldf#1{%
652   \bbl@afterlang
653   \let\bbl@afterlang\relax
654   \let\BabelModifiers\relax
655   \let\bbl@screset\relax}%
656 \def\ldf@finish#1{%
657   \loadlocalcfg{#1}%
658   \bbl@afterldf{#1}%
659   \expandafter\main@language\expandafter{#1}%
660   \catcode`\@=\atcatcode \let\atcatcode\relax
661   \catcode`\==\eqcatcode \let\eqcatcode\relax}
```

After the preamble of the document the commands `\LdfInit`, `\ldf@quit` and `\ldf@finish` are no longer needed. Therefore they are turned into warning messages in \LaTeX .

```
662 \@onlypreamble\LdfInit
663 \@onlypreamble\ldf@quit
664 \@onlypreamble\ldf@finish
```

`\main@language` This command should be used in the various language definition files. It stores its
`\bbl@main@language` argument in `\bbl@main@language`; to be used to switch to the correct language at the beginning of the document.

```
665 \def\main@language#1{%
666   \def\bbl@main@language{#1}%
667   \let\language\name\bbl@main@language
668   \bbl@patterns{\language}}
```

We also have to make sure that some code gets executed at the beginning of the document. Languages does not set `\pagedir`, so we set here for the whole document to the main `\bodydir`.

```
669 \AtBeginDocument{%
670   \expandafter\selectlanguage\expandafter{\bbl@main@language}%
671   \ifcase\bbl@engine\or\pagedir\bodydir\fi} % TODO - a better place
```

A bit of optimization. Select in heads/foots the language only if necessary.

```
672 \def\select@language@x#1{%
673   \ifcase\bbl@select@type
674     \bbl@ifsamestring\language\name{#1}{\select@language{#1}}%
675   \else
676     \select@language{#1}%
677   \fi}
```

8.4 Shorthands

`\bbl@add@special` The macro `\bbl@add@special` is used to add a new character (or single character control sequence) to the macro `\dospecials` (and `\@sanitize` if \LaTeX is used). It is used only at one place, namely when `\initiate@active@char` is called (which is ignored if the char has been made active before). Because `\@sanitize` can be undefined, we put the definition inside a conditional.

Items are added to the lists without checking its existence or the original catcode. It does not hurt, but should be fixed. It's already done with `\nfss@catcodes`, added in 3.10.

```
678 \bbl@trace{Shorhands}
679 \def\bbl@add@special#1{% 1:a macro like "\", \?, etc.
680   \bbl@add\dospecials{\do#1}% test @sanitize = \relax, for back. compat.
681   \bbl@ifunset{@sanitize}{\bbl@add\@sanitize{\@makeother#1}}%
682   \ifx\nfss@catcodes\undefined\else % TODO - same for above
683     \begingroup
684       \catcode`#1\active
685       \nfss@catcodes
686       \ifnum\catcode`#1=\active
687         \endgroup
688         \bbl@add\nfss@catcodes{\@makeother#1}%
689       \else
690         \endgroup
691       \fi
692   \fi}
```

`\bbl@remove@special` The companion of the former macro is `\bbl@remove@special`. It removes a character from the set macros `\dospecials` and `\@sanitize`, but it is not used at all in the babel core.

```
693 \def\bbl@remove@special#1{%
694   \begingroup
695   \def\x##1##2{\ifnum`#1=`##2\noexpand\@empty
696     \else\noexpand##1\noexpand##2\fi}%
697   \def\do{\x\do}%
698   \def\@makeother{\x\@makeother}%
699   \edef\x{\endgroup
700     \def\noexpand\dospecials{\dospecials}%
701     \expandafter\ifx\cename @sanitize\endcename\relax\else
702       \def\noexpand\@sanitize{\@sanitize}%
703     \fi}%
704   \x}
```

`\initiate@active@char` A language definition file can call this macro to make a character active. This macro takes one argument, the character that is to be made active. When the character was already active this macro does nothing. Otherwise, this macro defines the control sequence `\normal@char⟨char⟩` to expand to the character in its ‘normal state’ and it defines the active character to expand to `\normal@char⟨char⟩` by default (`⟨char⟩` being the character to be made active). Later its definition can be changed to expand to `\active@char⟨char⟩` by calling `\bbl@activate{⟨char⟩}`.

For example, to make the double quote character active one could have `\initiate@active@char{"}` in a language definition file. This defines " as `\active@prefix "\active@char"` (where the first " is the character with its original catcode, when the shorthand is created, and `\active@char` is a single token). In protected contexts, it expands to `\protect "` or `\noexpand "` (ie, with the original "); otherwise `\active@char` is executed. This macro in turn expands to `\normal@char` in “safe” contexts (eg, `\label`), but `\user@active` in normal “unsafe” ones. The latter search a definition in the user, language and system levels, in this order, but if none is found, `\normal@char` is used. However, a deactivated shorthand (with `\bbl@deactivate` is defined as `\active@prefix "\normal@char`).

The following macro is used to define shorthands in the three levels. It takes 4 arguments: the (string'ed) character, \<level>@group, <level>@active and <next-level>@active (except in system).

```

705 \def\bb1@active@def#1#2#3#4{%
706   \namedef{#3#1}{%
707     \expandafter\ifx\csname#2@sh@#1\endcsname\relax
708       \bb1@afterelse\bb1@sh@select#2#1{#3@arg#1}{#4#1}%
709     \else
710       \bb1@afterfi\csname#2@sh@#1\endcsname
711     \fi}%

```

When there is also no current-level shorthand with an argument we will check whether there is a next-level defined shorthand for this active character.

```

712 \long\@namedef{#3@arg#1}##1{%
713   \expandafter\ifx\csname#2@sh@#1\string##1\endcsname\relax
714     \bb1@afterelse\csname#4#1\endcsname##1%
715   \else
716     \bb1@afterfi\csname#2@sh@#1\string##1\endcsname
717   \fi}%

```

\initiate@active@char calls \@initiate@active@char with 3 arguments. All of them are the same character with different catcodes: active, other (\string'ed) and the original one. This trick simplifies the code a lot.

```

718 \def\initiate@active@char#1{%
719   \bb1@ifunset{active@char\string#1}%
720   {\bb1@withactive
721     {\expandafter\@initiate@active@char\expandafter}#1\string#1#1}%
722   {}}

```

The very first thing to do is saving the original catcode and the original definition, even if not active, which is possible (undefined characters require a special treatment to avoid making them \relax).

```

723 \def\@initiate@active@char#1#2#3{%
724   \bb1@csarg\edef{oricat@#2}{\catcode`#2=\the\catcode`#2\relax}%
725   \ifx#1\@undefined
726     \bb1@csarg\edef{oridef@#2}{\let\noexpand#1\noexpand\@undefined}%
727   \else
728     \bb1@csarg\let{oridef@#2}#1%
729     \bb1@csarg\edef{oridef@#2}{%
730       \let\noexpand#1%
731       \expandafter\noexpand\csname bbl@oridef@#2\endcsname}%
732   \fi

```

If the character is already active we provide the default expansion under this shorthand mechanism. Otherwise we write a message in the transcript file, and define \normal@char<char> to expand to the character in its default state. If the character is mathematically active when babel is loaded (for example ') the normal expansion is somewhat different to avoid an infinite loop (but it does not prevent the loop if the mathcode is set to "8000 *a posteriori*").

```

733 \ifx#1#3\relax
734   \expandafter\let\csname normal@char#2\endcsname#3%
735 \else
736   \bb1@info{Making #2 an active character}%
737   \ifnum\mathcode`#2="8000
738     \@namedef{normal@char#2}{%
739       \textormath{#3}{\csname bbl@oridef@#2\endcsname}}%
740   \else
741     \@namedef{normal@char#2}{#3}%

```

742 \fi

To prevent problems with the loading of other packages after babel we reset the catcode of the character to the original one at the end of the package and of each language file (except with KeepShorthandsActive). It is re-activate again at \begin{document}. We also need to make sure that the shorthands are active during the processing of the .aux file. Otherwise some citations may give unexpected results in the printout when a shorthand was used in the optional argument of \bibitem for example. Then we make it active (not strictly necessary, but done for backward compatibility).

```

743     \bbl@restoreactive{#2}%
744     \AtBeginDocument{%
745         \catcode`#2\active
746         \if@filesw
747             \immediate\write\@mainaux{\catcode`\string#2\active}%
748         \fi}%
749     \expandafter\bbl@add@special\csname#2\endcsname
750     \catcode`#2\active
751     \fi

```

Now we have set \normal@char⟨char⟩, we must define \active@char⟨char⟩, to be executed when the character is activated. We define the first level expansion of \active@char⟨char⟩ to check the status of the @safe@actives flag. If it is set to true we expand to the ‘normal’ version of this character, otherwise we call \user@active⟨char⟩ to start the search of a definition in the user, language and system levels (or eventually normal@char⟨char⟩).

```

752     \let\bbl@tempa\@firstoftwo
753     \if\string^#2%
754         \def\bbl@tempa{\noexpand\textormath}%
755     \else
756         \ifx\bbl@mathnormal\@undefined\else
757             \let\bbl@tempa\bbl@mathnormal
758         \fi
759     \fi
760     \expandafter\edef\csname active@char#2\endcsname{%
761         \bbl@tempa
762         {\noexpand\if@safe@actives
763             \noexpand\expandafter
764             \expandafter\noexpand\csname normal@char#2\endcsname
765             \noexpand\else
766             \noexpand\expandafter
767             \expandafter\noexpand\csname bbl@doactive#2\endcsname
768             \noexpand\fi}%
769         {\expandafter\noexpand\csname normal@char#2\endcsname}}%
770     \bbl@csarg\edef{doactive#2}{%
771         \expandafter\noexpand\csname user@active#2\endcsname}%

```

We now define the default values which the shorthand is set to when activated or deactivated. It is set to the deactivated form (globally), so that the character expands to

\active@prefix ⟨char⟩ \normal@char⟨char⟩

(where \active@char⟨char⟩ is *one* control sequence!).

```

772     \bbl@csarg\edef{active@#2}{%
773         \noexpand\active@prefix\noexpand#1%
774         \expandafter\noexpand\csname active@char#2\endcsname}%
775     \bbl@csarg\edef{normal@#2}{%
776         \noexpand\active@prefix\noexpand#1%
777         \expandafter\noexpand\csname normal@char#2\endcsname}%
778     \expandafter\let\expandafter#1\csname bbl@normal@#2\endcsname

```

The next level of the code checks whether a user has defined a shorthand for himself with this character. First we check for a single character shorthand. If that doesn't exist we check for a shorthand with an argument.

```
779 \bbl@active@def#2\user@group{user@active}{language@active}%
780 \bbl@active@def#2\language@group{language@active}{system@active}%
781 \bbl@active@def#2\system@group{system@active}{normal@char}%
```

In order to do the right thing when a shorthand with an argument is used by itself at the end of the line we provide a definition for the case of an empty argument. For that case we let the shorthand character expand to its non-active self. Also, When a shorthand combination such as '' ends up in a heading \TeX would see `\protect'\protect'`. To prevent this from happening a couple of shorthand needs to be defined at user level.

```
782 \expandafter\edef\csname\user@group @sh@#2@@\endcsname
783 {\expandafter\noexpand\csname normal@char#2\endcsname}%
784 \expandafter\edef\csname\user@group @sh@#2@string\protect\endcsname
785 {\expandafter\noexpand\csname user@active#2\endcsname}%
```

Finally, a couple of special cases are taken care of. (1) If we are making the right quote (') active we need to change `\pr@m@s` as well. Also, make sure that a single ' in math mode 'does the right thing'. (2) If we are using the caret (^) as a shorthand character special care should be taken to make sure math still works. Therefore an extra level of expansion is introduced with a check for math mode on the upper level.

```
786 \if\string'#2%
787 \let\prim@s\bbl@prim@s
788 \let\active@math@prime#1%
789 \fi
790 \bbl@usehooks{initiateactive}{#{1}{#2}{#3}}}
```

The following package options control the behaviour of shorthands in math mode.

```
791 <<{*More package options}>> \equiv
792 \DeclareOption{math=active}{}
793 \DeclareOption{math=normal}{\def\bbl@mathnormal{\noexpand\textormath}}
794 <</More package options>>
```

Initiating a shorthand makes active the char. That is not strictly necessary but it is still done for backward compatibility. So we need to restore the original catcode at the end of package *and* and the end of the *ldf*.

```
795 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{KeepShorthandsActive}%
796 {\let\bbl@restoreactive\@gobble}%
797 {\def\bbl@restoreactive#1{%
798   \bbl@exp{%
799     \\\AfterBabelLanguage\\CurrentOption
800     {\catcode`#1=\the\catcode`#1\relax}%
801     \\\AtEndOfPackage
802     {\catcode`#1=\the\catcode`#1\relax}}}%
803   \AtEndOfPackage{\let\bbl@restoreactive\@gobble}}}
```

`\bbl@sh@select` This command helps the shorthand supporting macros to select how to proceed. Note that this macro needs to be expandable as do all the shorthand macros in order for them to work in expansion-only environments such as the argument of `\hyphenation`. This macro expects the name of a group of shorthands in its first argument and a shorthand character in its second argument. It will expand to either `\bbl@firstcs` or `\bbl@scndcs`. Hence two more arguments need to follow it.

```
804 \def\bbl@sh@select#1#2{%
805   \expandafter\ifx\csname#1sh@#2@sel\endcsname\relax
806     \bbl@afterelse\bbl@scndcs
807   \else
```

```

808 \bbl@afterfi\csname#1@sh#2@sel\endcsname
809 \fi}

\active@prefix The command \active@prefix which is used in the expansion of active characters has a
function similar to \OT1-cmd in that it \protects the active character whenever \protect
is not \@typeset@protect.

810 \def\active@prefix#1{%
811 \ifx\protect\@typeset@protect
812 \else

When \protect is set to \@unexpandable@protect we make sure that the active character
is not expanded by inserting \noexpand in front of it. The \@gobble is needed to
remove a token such as \activechar: (when the double colon was the active character to
be dealt with).

813 \ifx\protect\@unexpandable@protect
814 \noexpand#1%
815 \else
816 \protect#1%
817 \fi
818 \expandafter\@gobble
819 \fi}

\if@safe@actives In some circumstances it is necessary to be able to change the expansion of an active
character on the fly. For this purpose the switch @safe@actives is available. The setting of
this switch should be checked in the first level expansion of \active@char<char>.

820 \newif\if@safe@actives
821 \@safe@activesfalse

\bbl@restore@actives When the output routine kicks in while the active characters were made “safe” this must
be undone in the headers to prevent unexpected typeset results. For this situation we
define a command to make them “unsafe” again.

822 \def\bbl@restore@actives{\if@safe@actives\@safe@activesfalse\fi}

\bbl@activate \bbl@deactivate Both macros take one argument, like \initiate@active@char. The macro is used to
change the definition of an active character to expand to \active@char<char> in the case
of \bbl@activate, or \normal@char<char> in the case of \bbl@deactivate.

823 \def\bbl@activate#1{%
824 \bbl@withactive{\expandafter\let\expandafter}#1%
825 \csname bbl@active@\string#1\endcsname}
826 \def\bbl@deactivate#1{%
827 \bbl@withactive{\expandafter\let\expandafter}#1%
828 \csname bbl@normal@\string#1\endcsname}

\bbl@firstcs \bbl@scndcs These macros have two arguments. They use one of their arguments to build a control
sequence from.

829 \def\bbl@firstcs#1#2{\csname#1\endcsname}
830 \def\bbl@scndcs#1#2{\csname#2\endcsname}

\declare@shorthand The command \declare@shorthand is used to declare a shorthand on a certain level. It
takes three arguments:

1. a name for the collection of shorthands, i.e. ‘system’, or ‘dutch’;
2. the character (sequence) that makes up the shorthand, i.e. ~ or "a;
3. the code to be executed when the shorthand is encountered.

```

```

831 \def\declare@shorthand#1#2{\@decl@short{#1}#2\@nil}
832 \def\@decl@short#1#2#3\@nil#4{%
833   \def\bbl@tempa{#3}%
834   \ifx\bbl@tempa\@empty
835     \expandafter\let\csname #1@sh@\string#2@sel\endcsname\bbl@scndcs
836     \bbl@ifunset{#1@sh@\string#2@}{}%
837     {\def\bbl@tempa{#4}%
838       \expandafter\ifx\csname#1@sh@\string#2@\endcsname\bbl@tempa
839       \else
840         \bbl@info
841           {Redefining #1 shorthand \string#2\\%
842             in language \CurrentOption}%
843         \fi}%
844     \@namedef{#1@sh@\string#2@}{#4}%
845   \else
846     \expandafter\let\csname #1@sh@\string#2@sel\endcsname\bbl@firstcs
847     \bbl@ifunset{#1@sh@\string#2@\string#3@}{}%
848     {\def\bbl@tempa{#4}%
849       \expandafter\ifx\csname#1@sh@\string#2@\string#3@\endcsname\bbl@tempa
850       \else
851         \bbl@info
852           {Redefining #1 shorthand \string#2\string#3\\%
853             in language \CurrentOption}%
854         \fi}%
855     \@namedef{#1@sh@\string#2@\string#3@}{#4}%
856   \fi}

```

`\textormath` Some of the shorthands that will be declared by the language definition files have to be usable in both text and mathmode. To achieve this the helper macro `\textormath` is provided.

```

857 \def\textormath{%
858   \ifmmode
859     \expandafter\@secondoftwo
860   \else
861     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
862   \fi}

```

`\user@group` The current concept of ‘shorthands’ supports three levels or groups of shorthands. For each level the name of the level or group is stored in a macro. The default is to have a user group; use language group ‘english’ and have a system group called ‘system’.

```

863 \def\user@group{user}
864 \def\language@group{english}
865 \def\system@group{system}

```

`\useshorthands` This is the user level command to tell \TeX that user level shorthands will be used in the document. It takes one argument, the character that starts a shorthand. First note that this is user level, and then initialize and activate the character for use as a shorthand character (ie, it’s active in the preamble). Languages can deactivate shorthands, so a starred version is also provided which activates them always after the language has been switched.

```

866 \def\useshorthands{%
867   \@ifstar\bbl@usesh@s{\bbl@usesh@x{}}
868   \def\bbl@usesh@s#1{%
869     \bbl@usesh@x
870     {\AddBabelHook{babel-sh-\string#1}{afterextras}{\bbl@activate{#1}}}%
871     {#1}}
872   \def\bbl@usesh@x#1#2{%
873     \bbl@ifshorthand{#2}%

```



```

874 {\def\user@group{user}%
875 \initiate@active@char{#2}%
876 #1%
877 \bbl@activate{#2}}%
878 {\bbl@error
879 {Cannot declare a shorthand turned off (\string#2)}
880 {Sorry, but you cannot use shorthands which have been\\%
881 turned off in the package options}}}
```

`\defineshorthand` Currently we only support two groups of user level shorthands, named internally `user` and `user@<lang>` (language-dependent user shorthands). By default, only the first one is taken into account, but if the former is also used (in the optional argument of `\defineshorthand`) a new level is inserted for it (`user@generic`, done by `\bbl@set@user@generic`); we make also sure `{}` and `\protect` are taken into account in this new top level.

```

882 \def\user@language@group{user@\language@group}
883 \def\bbl@set@user@generic#1#2{%
884 \bbl@ifunset{user@generic@active#1}%
885 {\bbl@active@def#1\user@language@group{user@active}{user@generic@active}%
886 \bbl@active@def#1\user@group{user@generic@active}{language@active}%
887 \expandafter\edef\csname#2sh@#1@@\endcsname{%
888 \expandafter\noexpand\csname normal@char#1\endcsname}%
889 \expandafter\edef\csname#2sh@#1@\string\protect@\endcsname{%
890 \expandafter\noexpand\csname user@active#1\endcsname}}%
891 \@empty}
892 \newcommand\defineshorthand[3][user]{%
893 \edef\bbl@tempa{\zap@space#1 \@empty}%
894 \bbl@for\bbl@tempb\bbl@tempa{%
895 \if*\expandafter\@car\bbl@tempb\@nil
896 \edef\bbl@tempb{user@\expandafter\@gobble\bbl@tempb}%
897 \@expandtwoargs
898 \bbl@set@user@generic{\expandafter\string\@car#2\@nil}\bbl@tempb
899 \fi
900 \declare@shorthand{\bbl@tempb}{#2}{#3}}}
```

`\languageshorthands` A user level command to change the language from which shorthands are used. Unfortunately, `babel` currently does not keep track of defined groups, and therefore there is no way to catch a possible change in casing.

```

901 \def\languageshorthands#1{\def\language@group{#1}}
```

`\aliasshorthand` First the new shorthand needs to be initialized,

```

902 \def\aliasshorthand#1#2{%
903 \bbl@ifshorthand{#2}%
904 {\expandafter\ifx\csname active@char\string#2\endcsname\relax
905 \ifx\document\@notprerr
906 \@notshorthand{#2}%
907 \else
908 \initiate@active@char{#2}%
```

Then, we define the new shorthand in terms of the original one, but note with `\aliasshorthands{"}{/}` is `\active@prefix / \active@char /`, so we still need to let the latest to `\active@char`.

```

909 \expandafter\let\csname active@char\string#2\endcsname
910 \csname active@char\string#1\endcsname
911 \expandafter\let\csname normal@char\string#2\endcsname
912 \csname normal@char\string#1\endcsname
913 \bbl@activate{#2}%
914 \fi
```

```

915     \fi}%
916     {\bbl@error
917       {Cannot declare a shorthand turned off (\string#2)}
918       {Sorry, but you cannot use shorthands which have been\\%
919         turned off in the package options}}}

```

\@notshorthand

```

920 \def\@notshorthand#1{%
921   \bbl@error{%
922     The character '\string #1' should be made a shorthand character;\\%
923     add the command \string\usesshorthands\string{#1\string} to
924     the preamble.\\%
925     I will ignore your instruction}%
926   {You may proceed, but expect unexpected results}}

```

\shorthandon The first level definition of these macros just passes the argument on to \bbl@switch@sh, adding \@nil at the end to denote the end of the list of characters.

```

927 \newcommand*\shorthandon[1]{\bbl@switch@sh\@ne#1\@nnil}
928 \DeclareRobustCommand*\shorthandoff{%
929   \@ifstar{\bbl@shorthandoff\tw@}{\bbl@shorthandoff\z@}}
930 \def\bbl@shorthandoff#1#2{\bbl@switch@sh#1#2\@nnil}

```

\bbl@switch@sh The macro \bbl@switch@sh takes the list of characters apart one by one and subsequently switches the category code of the shorthand character according to the first argument of \bbl@switch@sh.

But before any of this switching takes place we make sure that the character we are dealing with is known as a shorthand character. If it is, a macro such as \active@char" should exist.

Switching off and on is easy – we just set the category code to ‘other’ (12) and \active. With the starred version, the original catcode and the original definition, saved in @initiate@active@char, are restored.

```

931 \def\bbl@switch@sh#1#2{%
932   \ifx#2\@nnil\else
933     \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@active@\string#2}%
934     {\bbl@error
935       {I cannot switch '\string#2' on or off--not a shorthand}%
936       {This character is not a shorthand. Maybe you made\\%
937         a typing mistake? I will ignore your instruction}}}%
938     {\ifcase#1%
939       \catcode`#2\relax
940       \or
941       \catcode`#2\active
942       \or
943       \csname bbl@oricat@\string#2\endcsname
944       \csname bbl@oridef@\string#2\endcsname
945       \fi}%
946     \bbl@afterfi\bbl@switch@sh#1%
947   \fi}

```

Note the value is that at the expansion time, eg, in the preamble shorthands are usually deactivated.

```

948 \def\babelshorthand{\active@prefix\babelshorthand\bbl@putsh}
949 \def\bbl@putsh#1{%
950   \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@active@\string#1}%
951   {\bbl@putsh@i#1\@empty\@nnil}%
952   {\csname bbl@active@\string#1\endcsname}}
953 \def\bbl@putsh@i#1#2\@nnil{%

```

```

954 \csname\language @sh@\string#1@%
955 \ifx\@empty#2\else\string#2@\fi\endcsname}
956 \ifx\bbbl@opt@shorthands\@nnil\else
957 \let\bbbl@s@initiate@active@char\initiate@active@char
958 \def\initiate@active@char#1{%
959 \bbbl@ifshorthand{#1}{\bbbl@s@initiate@active@char{#1}}{}}
960 \let\bbbl@s@switch@sh\bbbl@switch@sh
961 \def\bbbl@switch@sh#1#2{%
962 \ifx#2\@nnil\else
963 \bbbl@afterfi
964 \bbbl@ifshorthand{#2}{\bbbl@s@switch@sh#1{#2}}{\bbbl@switch@sh#1}%
965 \fi}
966 \let\bbbl@s@activate\bbbl@activate
967 \def\bbbl@activate#1{%
968 \bbbl@ifshorthand{#1}{\bbbl@s@activate{#1}}{}}
969 \let\bbbl@s@deactivate\bbbl@deactivate
970 \def\bbbl@deactivate#1{%
971 \bbbl@ifshorthand{#1}{\bbbl@s@deactivate{#1}}{}}
972 \fi

```

\bbbl@prim@s One of the internal macros that are involved in substituting \prime for each right quote in
\bbbl@pr@m@s mathmode is \prim@s. This checks if the next character is a right quote. When the right
quote is active, the definition of this macro needs to be adapted to look also for an active
right quote; the hat could be active, too.

```

973 \def\bbbl@prim@s{%
974 \prime\futurelet\@let@token\bbbl@pr@m@s}
975 \def\bbbl@if@primes#1#2{%
976 \ifx#1\@let@token
977 \expandafter\@firstoftwo
978 \else\ifx#2\@let@token
979 \bbbl@afterelse\expandafter\@firstoftwo
980 \else
981 \bbbl@afterfi\expandafter\@secondoftwo
982 \fi\fi}
983 \begingroup
984 \catcode`\^=7 \catcode`\*=\active \lccode`\*=\^
985 \catcode`\'=12 \catcode`\"=\active \lccode`\"=\'
986 \lowercase{%
987 \gdef\bbbl@pr@m@s{%
988 \bbbl@if@primes"%
989 \pr@@s
990 {\bbbl@if@primes*\pr@@t\egroup}}}
991 \endgroup

```

Usually the ~ is active and expands to \penalty\@M_{. When it is written to the .aux file it is written expanded. To prevent that and to be able to use the character ~ as a start character for a shorthand, it is redefined here as a one character shorthand on system level. The system declaration is in most cases redundant (when ~ is still a non-break space), and in some cases is inconvenient (if ~ has been redefined); however, for backward compatibility it is maintained (some existing documents may rely on the babel value).

```

992 \initiate@active@char{~}
993 \declare@shorthand{system}{~}{\leavevmode\nobreak\ }
994 \bbbl@activate{~}

```

\OT1dqpos The position of the double quote character is different for the OT1 and T1 encodings. It will
\T1dqpos later be selected using the \f@encoding macro. Therefore we define two macros here to
store the position of the character in these encodings.

```

995 \expandafter\def\csname OT1dpos\endcsname{127}
996 \expandafter\def\csname T1dpos\endcsname{4}

```

When the macro `\f@encoding` is undefined (as it is in plain \TeX) we define it here to expand to OT1

```

997 \ifx\f@encoding\@undefined
998   \def\f@encoding{OT1}
999 \fi

```

8.5 Language attributes

Language attributes provide a means to give the user control over which features of the language definition files he wants to enable.

`\languageattribute` The macro `\languageattribute` checks whether its arguments are valid and then activates the selected language attribute. First check whether the language is known, and then process each attribute in the list.

```

1000 \bbl@trace{Language attributes}
1001 \newcommand\languageattribute[2]{%
1002   \def\bbl@tempc{#1}%
1003   \bbl@fixname\bbl@tempc
1004   \bbl@iflanguage\bbl@tempc{%
1005     \bbl@vforeach{#2}{%

```

We want to make sure that each attribute is selected only once; therefore we store the already selected attributes in `\bbl@known@attribs`. When that control sequence is not yet defined this attribute is certainly not selected before.

```

1006     \ifx\bbl@known@attribs\@undefined
1007       \in@false
1008     \else

```

Now we need to see if the attribute occurs in the list of already selected attributes.

```

1009       \bbl@xin@{,\bbl@tempc-##1,},{,\bbl@known@attribs,}%
1010     \fi

```

When the attribute was in the list we issue a warning; this might not be the users intention.

```

1011     \ifin@
1012       \bbl@warning{%
1013         You have more than once selected the attribute '##1'\%
1014         for language #1}%
1015     \else

```

When we end up here the attribute is not selected before. So, we add it to the list of selected attributes and execute the associated \TeX -code.

```

1016       \bbl@exp{%
1017         \\bbl@add@list\\bbl@known@attribs{\bbl@tempc-##1}}%
1018       \edef\bbl@tempa{\bbl@tempc-##1}%
1019       \expandafter\bbl@ifknown@trib\expandafter{\bbl@tempa}\bbl@attributes%
1020       {\csname\bbl@tempc @attr##1\endcsname}%
1021       {\@attrerr{\bbl@tempc}{##1}}%
1022     \fi}}

```

This command should only be used in the preamble of a document.

```

1023 \@onlypreamble\languageattribute

```

The error text to be issued when an unknown attribute is selected.

```

1024 \newcommand*{\@attrerr}[2]{%
1025   \bbl@error
1026   {The attribute #2 is unknown for language #1.}%
1027   {Your command will be ignored, type <return> to proceed}}

```

`\bbl@declare@ttribute` This command adds the new language/attribute combination to the list of known attributes.

Then it defines a control sequence to be executed when the attribute is used in a document. The result of this should be that the macro `\extras...` for the current language is extended, otherwise the attribute will not work as its code is removed from memory at `\begin{document}`.

```

1028 \def\bbl@declare@ttribute#1#2#3{%
1029   \bbl@xin@{,#2,}{,\BabelModifiers,}%
1030   \ifin@
1031     \AfterBabelLanguage{#1}{\languageattribute{#1}{#2}}%
1032   \fi
1033   \bbl@add@list\bbl@attributes{#1-#2}%
1034   \expandafter\def\csname#1@attr#2\endcsname{#3}}

```

`\bbl@ifattributeset` This internal macro has 4 arguments. It can be used to interpret T_EX code based on whether a certain attribute was set. This command should appear inside the argument to `\AtBeginDocument` because the attributes are set in the document preamble, *after* babel is loaded.

The first argument is the language, the second argument the attribute being checked, and the third and fourth arguments are the true and false clauses.

```

1035 \def\bbl@ifattributeset#1#2#3#4{%

```

First we need to find out if any attributes were set; if not we're done.

```

1036   \ifx\bbl@known@attribs\@undefined
1037     \in@false
1038     \else

```

The we need to check the list of known attributes.

```

1039     \bbl@xin@{,#1-#2,}{,\bbl@known@attribs,}%
1040     \fi

```

When we're this far `\ifin@` has a value indicating if the attribute in question was set or not. Just to be safe the code to be executed is 'thrown over the `\fi`'.

```

1041   \ifin@
1042     \bbl@afterelse#3%
1043   \else
1044     \bbl@afterfi#4%
1045   \fi
1046 }

```

`\bbl@ifknown@trib` An internal macro to check whether a given language/attribute is known. The macro takes 4 arguments, the language/attribute, the attribute list, the T_EX-code to be executed when the attribute is known and the T_EX-code to be executed otherwise.

```

1047 \def\bbl@ifknown@trib#1#2{%

```

We first assume the attribute is unknown.

```

1048   \let\bbl@tempa\@secondoftwo

```

Then we loop over the list of known attributes, trying to find a match.

```

1049   \bbl@loopx\bbl@tempb{#2}{%
1050     \expandafter\in@\expandafter{\expandafter,\bbl@tempb,}{,#1,}%
1051     \ifin@

```

When a match is found the definition of `\bbl@tempa` is changed.

```

1052     \let\bbl@tempa\@firstoftwo
1053   \else
1054     \fi}%

```

Finally we execute `\bbl@tempa`.

```
1055 \bbl@tempa
1056 }
```

`\bbl@clear@ttribs` This macro removes all the attribute code from \LaTeX 's memory at `\begin{document}` time (if any is present).

```
1057 \def\bbl@clear@ttribs{%
1058   \ifx\bbl@attributes\undefined\else
1059     \bbl@loopx\bbl@tempa{\bbl@attributes}{%
1060       \expandafter\bbl@clear@ttrib\bbl@tempa.
1061     }%
1062   \let\bbl@attributes\undefined
1063   \fi}
1064 \def\bbl@clear@ttrib#1-#2.{%
1065   \expandafter\let\csname#1@attr@#2\endcsname\undefined}
1066 \AtBeginDocument{\bbl@clear@ttribs}
```

8.6 Support for saving macro definitions

To save the meaning of control sequences using `\babel@save`, we use temporary control sequences. To save hash table entries for these control sequences, we don't use the name of the control sequence to be saved to construct the temporary name. Instead we simply use the value of a counter, which is reset to zero each time we begin to save new values. This works well because we release the saved meanings before we begin to save a new set of control sequence meanings (see `\selectlanguage` and `\originalTeX`). Note undefined macros are not undefined any more when saved – they are `\relax`'ed.

`\babel@savecnt` The initialization of a new save cycle: reset the counter to zero.
`\babel@beginsave`

```
1067 \bbl@trace{Macros for saving definitions}
1068 \def\babel@beginsave{\babel@savecnt\z@}
```

Before it's forgotten, allocate the counter and initialize all.

```
1069 \newcount\babel@savecnt
1070 \babel@beginsave
```

`\babel@save` The macro `\babel@save⟨csname⟩` saves the current meaning of the control sequence `⟨csname⟩` to `\originalTeX`³⁰. To do this, we let the current meaning to a temporary control sequence, the restore commands are appended to `\originalTeX` and the counter is incremented.

```
1071 \def\babel@save#1{%
1072   \expandafter\let\csname babel@number\babel@savecnt\endcsname#1\relax
1073   \toks@\expandafter{\originalTeX\let#1=}
1074   \bbl@exp{%
1075     \def\\originalTeX{the\toks@<babel@number\babel@savecnt>\relax}}
1076   \advance\babel@savecnt@ne}
```

`\babel@savevariable` The macro `\babel@savevariable⟨variable⟩` saves the value of the variable. `⟨variable⟩` can be anything allowed after the `\the` primitive.

```
1077 \def\babel@savevariable#1{%
1078   \toks@\expandafter{\originalTeX #1=}
1079   \bbl@exp{\def\\originalTeX{the\toks@the#1\relax}}}
```

³⁰`\originalTeX` has to be expandable, i.e. you shouldn't let it to `\relax`.

`\bbl@frenchspacing` Some languages need to have `\frenchspacing` in effect. Others don't want that. The
`\bbl@nonfrenchspacing` command `\bbl@frenchspacing` switches it on when it isn't already in effect and
`\bbl@nonfrenchspacing` switches it off if necessary.

```
1080 \def\bbl@frenchspacing{%
1081   \ifnum\the\sfcode`\.=\@m
1082     \let\bbl@nonfrenchspacing\relax
1083   \else
1084     \frenchspacing
1085     \let\bbl@nonfrenchspacing\nonfrenchspacing
1086   \fi}
1087 \let\bbl@nonfrenchspacing\nonfrenchspacing
```

8.7 Short tags

`\babeltags` This macro is straightforward. After zapping spaces, we loop over the list and define the macros `\text{<tag>}` and `\<tag>`. Definitions are first expanded so that they don't contain `\csname` but the actual macro.

```
1088 \bbl@trace{Short tags}
1089 \def\babeltags#1{%
1090   \edef\bbl@tempa{\zap@space#1 \@empty}%
1091   \def\bbl@tempb##1=##2\@{}%
1092   \edef\bbl@tempc{%
1093     \noexpand\newcommand
1094     \expandafter\noexpand\csname ##1\endcsname{%
1095       \noexpand\protect
1096       \expandafter\noexpand\csname otherlanguage*\endcsname{##2}}
1097     \noexpand\newcommand
1098     \expandafter\noexpand\csname text##1\endcsname{%
1099       \noexpand\foreignlanguage{##2}}
1100   \bbl@tempc}%
1101   \bbl@for\bbl@tempa\bbl@tempa{%
1102     \expandafter\bbl@tempb\bbl@tempa\@{}}
```

8.8 Hyphens

`\babelhyphenation` This macro saves hyphenation exceptions. Two macros are used to store them:
`\bbl@hyphenation@` for the global ones and `\bbl@hyphenation<lang>` for language ones.
 See `\bbl@patterns` above for further details. We make sure there is a space between
 words when multiple commands are used.

```
1103 \bbl@trace{Hyphens}
1104 \@onlypreamble\babelhyphenation
1105 \AtEndOfPackage{%
1106   \newcommand\babelhyphenation[2][\@empty]{%
1107     \ifx\bbl@hyphenation@\relax
1108       \let\bbl@hyphenation@\@empty
1109     \fi
1110     \ifx\bbl@hyphlist\@empty\else
1111       \bbl@warning{%
1112         You must not intermingle \string\selectlanguage\space and\\%
1113         \string\babelhyphenation\space or some exceptions will not\\%
1114         be taken into account. Reported}%
1115     \fi
1116     \ifx\@empty#1%
1117       \protected@edef\bbl@hyphenation@{\bbl@hyphenation@\space#2}%
1118     \else
1119       \bbl@vforeach{#1}{%
```

```

1120 \def\bbl@tempa{##1}%
1121 \bbl@fixname\bbl@tempa
1122 \bbl@iflanguage\bbl@tempa{%
1123 \bbl@csarg\protected@edef{hyphenation@\bbl@tempa}{%
1124 \bbl@ifunset{bbl@hyphenation@\bbl@tempa}%
1125 \@empty
1126 {\csname bbl@hyphenation@\bbl@tempa\endcsname\space}%
1127 #2}}}%
1128 \fi}}

```

`\bbl@allowhyphens` This macro makes hyphenation possible. Basically its definition is nothing more than `\nobreak \hskip Opt plus Opt`³¹.

```

1129 \def\bbl@allowhyphens{\ifvmode\else\nobreak\hskip\z@skip\fi}
1130 \def\bbl@t@one{T1}
1131 \def\allowhyphens{\ifx\cf@encoding\bbl@t@one\else\bbl@allowhyphens\fi}

```

`\babelhyphen` Macros to insert common hyphens. Note the space before @ in `\babelhyphen`. Instead of protecting it with `\DeclareRobustCommand`, which could insert a `\relax`, we use the same procedure as shorthands, with `\active@prefix`.

```

1132 \newcommand\babellnullhyphen{\char\hyphenchar\font}
1133 \def\babelhyphen{\active@prefix\babelhyphen\bbl@hyphen}
1134 \def\bbl@hyphen{%
1135 \@ifstar{\bbl@hyphen@i @}{\bbl@hyphen@i \@empty}}
1136 \def\bbl@hyphen@i#1#2{%
1137 \bbl@ifunset{bbl@hy@#1#2\@empty}%
1138 {\csname bbl@#1usehyphen\endcsname{\discretionary{#2}{}{#2}}}%
1139 {\csname bbl@hy@#1#2\@empty\endcsname}}

```

The following two commands are used to wrap the “hyphen” and set the behaviour of the rest of the word – the version with a single @ is used when further hyphenation is allowed, while that with @@ if no more hyphen are allowed. In both cases, if the hyphen is preceded by a positive space, breaking after the hyphen is disallowed.

There should not be a discretionary after a hyphen at the beginning of a word, so it is prevented if preceded by a skip. Unfortunately, this does handle cases like “(-suffix)”.

`\nobreak` is always preceded by `\leavevmode`, in case the shorthand starts a paragraph.

```

1140 \def\bbl@usehyphen#1{%
1141 \leavevmode
1142 \ifdim\lastskip>\z@\mbox{#1}\else\nobreak#1\fi
1143 \nobreak\hskip\z@skip}
1144 \def\bbl@@usehyphen#1{%
1145 \leavevmode\ifdim\lastskip>\z@\mbox{#1}\else#1\fi}

```

The following macro inserts the hyphen char.

```

1146 \def\bbl@hyphenchar{%
1147 \ifnum\hyphenchar\font=\m@ne
1148 \babellnullhyphen
1149 \else
1150 \char\hyphenchar\font
1151 \fi}

```

Finally, we define the hyphen “types”. Their names will not change, so you may use them in ldf’s. After a space, the `\mbox` in `\bbl@hy@nobreak` is redundant.

```

1152 \def\bbl@hy@soft{\bbl@usehyphen{\discretionary{\bbl@hyphenchar}{}}{}}
1153 \def\bbl@hy@@soft{\bbl@usehyphen{\discretionary{\bbl@hyphenchar}{}}{}}
1154 \def\bbl@hy@hard{\bbl@usehyphen\bbl@hyphenchar}
1155 \def\bbl@hy@@hard{\bbl@usehyphen\bbl@hyphenchar}

```

³¹ $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$ begins and ends a word for hyphenation at a glue node. The penalty prevents a linebreak at this glue node.


```

1156 \def\bbl@hy@nobreak{\bbl@usehyphen{\mbox{\bbl@hyphenchar}}}
1157 \def\bbl@hy@@nobreak{\mbox{\bbl@hyphenchar}}
1158 \def\bbl@hy@repeat{%
1159   \bbl@usehyphen{%
1160     \discretionary{\bbl@hyphenchar}{\bbl@hyphenchar}{\bbl@hyphenchar}}
1161 \def\bbl@hy@@repeat{%
1162   \bbl@usehyphen{%
1163     \discretionary{\bbl@hyphenchar}{\bbl@hyphenchar}{\bbl@hyphenchar}}}
1164 \def\bbl@hy@empty{\hskip\z@skip}
1165 \def\bbl@hy@@empty{\discretionary{}{}{}}

```

`\bbl@disc` For some languages the macro `\bbl@disc` is used to ease the insertion of discretionaries for letters that behave ‘abnormally’ at a breakpoint.

```

1166 \def\bbl@disc#1#2{\nobreak\discretionary{#2-}{}{#1}\bbl@allowhyphens}

```

8.9 Multiencoding strings

The aim following commands is to provide a common interface for strings in several encodings. They also contains several hooks which can be used by `luatex` and `xetex`. The code is organized here with pseudo-guards, so we start with the basic commands.

Tools But first, a couple of tools. The first one makes global a local variable. This is not the best solution, but it works.

```

1167 \bbl@trace{Multiencoding strings}
1168 \def\bbl@tglobal#1{\global\let#1#1}
1169 \def\bbl@recatcode#1{%
1170   \@tempcnta="7F
1171   \def\bbl@tempa{%
1172     \ifnum\@tempcnta>"FF\else
1173       \catcode\@tempcnta=#1\relax
1174       \advance\@tempcnta\@ne
1175       \expandafter\bbl@tempa
1176     \fi}%
1177   \bbl@tempa}

```

The second one. We need to patch `\@uclclist`, but it is done once and only if `\SetCase` is used or if strings are encoded. The code is far from satisfactory for several reasons, including the fact `\@uclclist` is not a list any more. Therefore a package option is added to ignore it. Instead of gobbling the macro getting the next two elements (usually `\reserved@a`), we pass it as argument to `\bbl@uclc`. The parser is restarted inside `\(lang)\bbl@uclc` because we do not know how many expansions are necessary (depends on whether strings are encoded). The last part is tricky – when uppercasing, we have:

```
\let\bbl@tolower\@empty\bbl@toupper\@empty
```

and starts over (and similarly when lowercasing).

```

1178 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{nocase}%
1179   {\let\bbl@patchuclc\relax}%
1180   {\def\bbl@patchuclc{%
1181     \global\let\bbl@patchuclc\relax
1182     \g@addto@macro\@uclclist{\reserved@b{\reserved@b\bbl@uclc}}%
1183     \gdef\bbl@uclc##1{%
1184       \let\bbl@encoded\bbl@encoded@uclc
1185       \bbl@ifunset{\language @bbl@uclc}% and resumes it
1186       {##1}%

```

```

1187      {\let\bbl@tempa##1\relax % Used by LANG@bbl@uc1c
1188       \csname\language @bbl@uc1c\endcsname}%
1189      {\bbl@tolower\@empty}{\bbl@toupper\@empty}}}%
1190      \gdef\bbl@tolower{\csname\language @bbl@lc\endcsname}%
1191      \gdef\bbl@toupper{\csname\language @bbl@uc\endcsname}}}%
1192 <<(*More package options)>> ≡
1193 \DeclareOption{nocase}{}
1194 <</More package options>>

```

The following package options control the behaviour of `\SetString`.

```

1195 <<(*More package options)>> ≡
1196 \let\bbl@opt@strings\@nnil % accept strings=value
1197 \DeclareOption{strings}{\def\bbl@opt@strings{\BabelStringsDefault}}
1198 \DeclareOption{strings=encoded}{\let\bbl@opt@strings\relax}
1199 \def\BabelStringsDefault{generic}
1200 <</More package options>>

```

Main command This is the main command. With the first use it is redefined to omit the basic setup in subsequent blocks. We make sure strings contain actual letters in the range 128-255, not active characters.

```

1201 \@onlypreamble\StartBabelCommands
1202 \def\StartBabelCommands{%
1203   \begingroup
1204   \bbl@recatcode{11}%
1205   <⟨Macros local to BabelCommands⟩>
1206   \def\bbl@provstring##1##2{%
1207     \providecommand##1{##2}%
1208     \bbl@tglobal##1}%
1209   \global\let\bbl@scafter\@empty
1210   \let\StartBabelCommands\bbl@startcmds
1211   \ifx\BabelLanguages\relax
1212     \let\BabelLanguages\CurrentOption
1213   \fi
1214   \begingroup
1215   \let\bbl@screset\@nnil % local flag - disable 1st stopcommands
1216   \StartBabelCommands}
1217 \def\bbl@startcmds{%
1218   \ifx\bbl@screset\@nnil\else
1219     \bbl@usehooks{stopcommands}{}%
1220   \fi
1221   \endgroup
1222   \begingroup
1223   \@ifstar
1224     {\ifx\bbl@opt@strings\@nnil
1225       \let\bbl@opt@strings\BabelStringsDefault
1226       \fi
1227       \bbl@startcmds@i}%
1228     \bbl@startcmds@i}
1229 \def\bbl@startcmds@i#1#2{%
1230   \edef\bbl@L{\zap@space#1 \@empty}%
1231   \edef\bbl@G{\zap@space#2 \@empty}%
1232   \bbl@startcmds@ii}

```

Parse the encoding info to get the label, input, and font parts.

Select the behaviour of `\SetString`. There are two main cases, depending of if there is an optional argument: without it and `strings=encoded`, strings are defined always; otherwise, they are set only if they are still undefined (ie, fallback values). With labelled blocks and `strings=encoded`, define the strings, but with another value, define strings

only if the current label or font encoding is the value of strings; otherwise (ie, no strings or a block whose label is not in strings=) do nothing.

We presume the current block is not loaded, and therefore set (above) a couple of default values to gobble the arguments. Then, these macros are redefined if necessary according to several parameters.

```

1233 \newcommand\bbbl@startcmds@ii[1][\@empty]{%
1234   \let\SetString\@gobbletwo
1235   \let\bbbl@stringdef\@gobbletwo
1236   \let\AfterBabelCommands\@gobble
1237   \ifx\@empty#1%
1238     \def\bbbl@sc@label{generic}%
1239     \def\bbbl@encstring##1##2{%
1240       \ProvideTextCommandDefault##1{##2}%
1241       \bbbl@tglobal##1%
1242       \expandafter\bbbl@tglobal\csname\string?\string##1\endcsname}%
1243     \let\bbbl@sctest\in@true
1244   \else
1245     \let\bbbl@sc@charset\space % <- zapped below
1246     \let\bbbl@sc@fontenc\space % <- " "
1247     \def\bbbl@tempa##1=##2\@nil{%
1248       \bbbl@csarg\edef{sc@\zap@space##1 \@empty}{##2 }}%
1249     \bbbl@foreach{label=#1}{\bbbl@tempa##1\@nil}%
1250     \def\bbbl@tempa##1 ##2{% space -> comma
1251       ##1%
1252       \ifx\@empty##2\else\ifx,##1,\else,\fi\bbbl@afterfi\bbbl@tempa##2\fi}%
1253     \edef\bbbl@sc@fontenc{\expandafter\bbbl@tempa\bbbl@sc@fontenc\@empty}%
1254     \edef\bbbl@sc@label{\expandafter\zap@space\bbbl@sc@label\@empty}%
1255     \edef\bbbl@sc@charset{\expandafter\zap@space\bbbl@sc@charset\@empty}%
1256     \def\bbbl@encstring##1##2{%
1257       \bbbl@foreach\bbbl@sc@fontenc{%
1258         \bbbl@ifunset{T####1}%
1259         {}%
1260         {\ProvideTextCommand##1{####1}{##2}%
1261           \bbbl@tglobal##1%
1262           \expandafter
1263           \bbbl@tglobal\csname####1\string##1\endcsname}}}%
1264     \def\bbbl@sctest{%
1265       \bbbl@xin@{\bbbl@opt@strings,}{,\bbbl@sc@label,\bbbl@sc@fontenc,}}%
1266   \fi
1267   \ifx\bbbl@opt@strings\@nnil % ie, no strings key -> defaults
1268   \else\ifx\bbbl@opt@strings\relax % ie, strings=encoded
1269     \let\AfterBabelCommands\bbbl@aftercmds
1270     \let\SetString\bbbl@setstring
1271     \let\bbbl@stringdef\bbbl@encstring
1272   \else % ie, strings=value
1273     \bbbl@sctest
1274   \ifin@
1275     \let\AfterBabelCommands\bbbl@aftercmds
1276     \let\SetString\bbbl@setstring
1277     \let\bbbl@stringdef\bbbl@provstring
1278   \fi\fi\fi
1279   \bbbl@scswitch
1280   \ifx\bbbl@G\@empty
1281     \def\SetString##1##2{%
1282       \bbbl@error{Missing group for string \string##1}%
1283       {You must assign strings to some category, typically\\%
1284         captions or extras, but you set none}}%
1285   \fi

```

```

1286 \ifx\@empty#1%
1287 \bbl@usehooks{defaultcommands}{}%
1288 \else
1289 \@expandtwoargs
1290 \bbl@usehooks{encodedcommands}{\bbl@sc@charset}{\bbl@sc@fontenc}}%
1291 \fi}

```

There are two versions of `\bbl@scswitch`. The first version is used when `ldfs` are read, and it makes sure `\langle group \rangle \langle language \rangle` is reset, but only once (`\bbl@screset` is used to keep track of this). The second version is used in the preamble and packages loaded after `babel` and does nothing. The macro `\bbl@forlang` loops `\bbl@L` but its body is executed only if the value is in `\BabelLanguages` (inside `babel`) or `\date \langle language \rangle` is defined (after `babel` has been loaded). There are also two version of `\bbl@forlang`. The first one skips the current iteration if the language is not in `\BabelLanguages` (used in `ldfs`), and the second one skips undefined languages (after `babel` has been loaded) .

```

1292 \def\bbl@forlang#1#2{%
1293 \bbl@for#1\bbl@L{%
1294 \bbl@xin@{, #1, }{\, \BabelLanguages,}%
1295 \ifin@#2\relax\fi}}
1296 \def\bbl@scswitch{%
1297 \bbl@forlang\bbl@tempa{%
1298 \ifx\bbl@G\@empty\else
1299 \ifx\SetString\@gobbletwo\else
1300 \edef\bbl@GL{\bbl@G\bbl@tempa}%
1301 \bbl@xin@{\, \bbl@GL, }{\, \bbl@screset,}%
1302 \ifin@\else
1303 \global\expandafter\let\csname\bbl@GL\endcsname\@undefined
1304 \xdef\bbl@screset{\bbl@screset, \bbl@GL}%
1305 \fi
1306 \fi
1307 \fi}}
1308 \AtEndOfPackage{%
1309 \def\bbl@forlang#1#2{\bbl@for#1\bbl@L{\bbl@ifunset{date#1}{\{#2\}}}%
1310 \let\bbl@scswitch\relax}
1311 \@onlypreamble\EndBabelCommands
1312 \def\EndBabelCommands{%
1313 \bbl@usehooks{stopcommands}{}%
1314 \endgroup
1315 \endgroup
1316 \bbl@scafter}

```

Now we define commands to be used inside `\StartBabelCommands`.

Strings The following macro is the actual definition of `\SetString` when it is “active” First save the “switcher”. Create it if undefined. Strings are defined only if undefined (ie, like `\providescommand`). With the event `stringprocess` you can preprocess the string by manipulating the value of `\BabelString`. If there are several hooks assigned to this event, preprocessing is done in the same order as defined. Finally, the string is set.

```

1317 \def\bbl@setstring#1#2{%
1318 \bbl@forlang\bbl@tempa{%
1319 \edef\bbl@LC{\bbl@tempa\bbl@stripslash#1}%
1320 \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@LC}% eg, \germanchaptername
1321 {\global\expandafter % TODO - con \bbl@exp ?
1322 \bbl@add\csname\bbl@G\bbl@tempa\expandafter\endcsname\expandafter
1323 {\expandafter\bbl@scset\expandafter#1\csname\bbl@LC\endcsname}}}%
1324 {}%
1325 \def\BabelString{#2}%

```

```

1326 \bbl@usehooks{stringprocess}{}%
1327 \expandafter\bbl@stringdef
1328 \csname\bbl@LC\expandafter\endcsname\expandafter{\BabelString}}

```

Now, some additional stuff to be used when encoded strings are used. Captions then include `\bbl@encoded` for string to be expanded in case transformations. It is `\relax` by default, but in `\MakeUppercase` and `\MakeLowercase` its value is a modified expandable `\@changed@cmd`.

```

1329 \ifx\bbl@opt@strings\relax
1330 \def\bbl@scset#1#2{\def#1{\bbl@encoded#2}}
1331 \bbl@patchuclc
1332 \let\bbl@encoded\relax
1333 \def\bbl@encoded@uclc#1{%
1334 \inmathwarn#1%
1335 \expandafter\ifx\csname\cf@encoding\string#1\endcsname\relax
1336 \expandafter\ifx\csname ?\string#1\endcsname\relax
1337 \TextSymbolUnavailable#1%
1338 \else
1339 \csname ?\string#1\endcsname
1340 \fi
1341 \else
1342 \csname\cf@encoding\string#1\endcsname
1343 \fi}
1344 \else
1345 \def\bbl@scset#1#2{\def#1{#2}}
1346 \fi

```

Define `\SetStringLoop`, which is actually set inside `\StartBabelCommands`. The current definition is somewhat complicated because we need a count, but `\count@` is not under our control (remember `\SetString` may call hooks). Instead of defining a dedicated count, we just “pre-expand” its value.

```

1347 <<*Macros local to BabelCommands>> ≡
1348 \def\SetStringLoop##1##2{%
1349 \def\bbl@templ####1{\expandafter\noexpand\csname##1\endcsname}%
1350 \count@z@
1351 \bbl@loop\bbl@tempa{##2}{% empty items and spaces are ok
1352 \advance\count@\@ne
1353 \toks@\expandafter{\bbl@tempa}%
1354 \bbl@exp{%
1355 \\\SetString\bbl@templ{\romannumeral\count@}{\the\toks@}%
1356 \count@=\the\count@\relax}}}%
1357 <</Macros local to BabelCommands>>

```

Delaying code Now the definition of `\AfterBabelCommands` when it is activated.

```

1358 \def\bbl@aftercmds#1{%
1359 \toks@\expandafter{\bbl@scafter#1}%
1360 \xdef\bbl@scafter{\the\toks@}}

```

Case mapping The command `\SetCase` provides a way to change the behaviour of `\MakeUppercase` and `\MakeLowercase`. `\bbl@tempa` is set by the patched `\@uclclist` to the parsing command.

```

1361 <<*Macros local to BabelCommands>> ≡
1362 \newcommand\SetCase[3][{}]{%
1363 \bbl@patchuclc
1364 \bbl@forlang\bbl@tempa{%
1365 \expandafter\bbl@encstring

```

```

1366      \csname\bb1@tempa @bb1@ucl\endcsname{\bb1@tempa##1}%
1367      \expandafter\bb1@encstring
1368      \csname\bb1@tempa @bb1@uc\endcsname{##2}%
1369      \expandafter\bb1@encstring
1370      \csname\bb1@tempa @bb1@lc\endcsname{##3}}}%
1371 <</Macros local to BabelCommands>>

```

Macros to deal with case mapping for hyphenation. To decide if the document is monolingual or multilingual, we make a rough guess – just see if there is a comma in the languages list, built in the first pass of the package options.

```

1372 <<{*Macros local to BabelCommands}>> ≡
1373 \newcommand\SetHyphenMap[1]{%
1374   \bb1@forlang\bb1@tempa{%
1375     \expandafter\bb1@stringdef
1376     \csname\bb1@tempa @bb1@hyphenmap\endcsname{##1}}}%
1377 <</Macros local to BabelCommands>>

```

There are 3 helper macros which do most of the work for you.

```

1378 \newcommand\BabelLower[2]{% one to one.
1379   \ifnum\lccode#1=#2\else
1380     \babel@savevariable{\lccode#1}%
1381     \lccode#1=#2\relax
1382   \fi}
1383 \newcommand\BabelLowerMM[4]{% many-to-many
1384   \@tempcnta=#1\relax
1385   \@tempcntb=#4\relax
1386   \def\bb1@tempa{%
1387     \ifnum\@tempcnta>#2\else
1388       \@expandtwoargs\BabelLower{\the\@tempcnta}{\the\@tempcntb}%
1389       \advance\@tempcnta#3\relax
1390       \advance\@tempcntb#3\relax
1391       \expandafter\bb1@tempa
1392     \fi}%
1393   \bb1@tempa}
1394 \newcommand\BabelLowerMO[4]{% many-to-one
1395   \@tempcnta=#1\relax
1396   \def\bb1@tempa{%
1397     \ifnum\@tempcnta>#2\else
1398       \@expandtwoargs\BabelLower{\the\@tempcnta}{#4}%
1399       \advance\@tempcnta#3
1400       \expandafter\bb1@tempa
1401     \fi}%
1402   \bb1@tempa}

```

The following package options control the behaviour of hyphenation mapping.

```

1403 <<{*More package options}>> ≡
1404 \DeclareOption{hyphenmap=off}{\chardef\bb1@opt@hyphenmap\z@}
1405 \DeclareOption{hyphenmap=first}{\chardef\bb1@opt@hyphenmap\@ne}
1406 \DeclareOption{hyphenmap=select}{\chardef\bb1@opt@hyphenmap\tw@}
1407 \DeclareOption{hyphenmap=other}{\chardef\bb1@opt@hyphenmap\thr@}
1408 \DeclareOption{hyphenmap=other*}{\chardef\bb1@opt@hyphenmap4\relax}
1409 <</More package options>>

```

Initial setup to provide a default behaviour if hyphenmap is not set.

```

1410 \AtEndOfPackage{%
1411   \ifx\bb1@opt@hyphenmap\undefined
1412     \bb1@xin{,}{\bb1@language@opts}%
1413     \chardef\bb1@opt@hyphenmap\ifin4\else\@ne\fi
1414   \fi}

```

8.10 Macros common to a number of languages

`\set@low@box` The following macro is used to lower quotes to the same level as the comma. It prepares its argument in box register 0.

```
1415 \bbl@trace{Macros related to glyphs}
1416 \def\set@low@box#1{\setbox\tw@hbox{,}\setbox\z@hbox{#1}%
1417   \dimen\z@ht\z@ \advance\dimen\z@ -ht\tw@%
1418   \setbox\z@hbox{\lower\dimen\z@ \box\z@}\ht\z@ht\tw@ \dp\z@dp\tw@}
```

`\save@sf@q` The macro `\save@sf@q` is used to save and reset the current space factor.

```
1419 \def\save@sf@q#1{\leavevmode
1420   \begingroup
1421   \edef\@SF{\spacefactor\the\spacefactor}#1\@SF
1422   \endgroup}
```

8.11 Making glyphs available

This section makes a number of glyphs available that either do not exist in the OT1 encoding and have to be ‘faked’, or that are not accessible through `T1enc.def`.

8.11.1 Quotation marks

`\quotedblbase` In the T1 encoding the opening double quote at the baseline is available as a separate character, accessible via `\quotedblbase`. In the OT1 encoding it is not available, therefore we make it available by lowering the normal open quote character to the baseline.

```
1423 \ProvideTextCommand{\quotedblbase}{OT1}{%
1424   \save@sf@q{\set@low@box{\textquotedblright\}}%
1425   \box\z@\kern-.04em\bbl@allowhyphens}}
```

Make sure that when an encoding other than OT1 or T1 is used this glyph can still be typeset.

```
1426 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\quotedblbase}{%
1427   \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\quotedblbase}}
```

`\quotesinglbase` We also need the single quote character at the baseline.

```
1428 \ProvideTextCommand{\quotesinglbase}{OT1}{%
1429   \save@sf@q{\set@low@box{\textquoteright\}}%
1430   \box\z@\kern-.04em\bbl@allowhyphens}}
```

Make sure that when an encoding other than OT1 or T1 is used this glyph can still be typeset.

```
1431 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\quotesinglbase}{%
1432   \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\quotesinglbase}}
```

`\guillemotleft` The guillemet characters are not available in OT1 encoding. They are faked.

`\guillemotright`

```
1433 \ProvideTextCommand{\guillemotleft}{OT1}{%
1434   \ifmmode
1435     \ll
1436   \else
1437     \save@sf@q{\nobreak
1438       \raise.2ex\hbox{$\scriptscriptstyle\ll$}\bbl@allowhyphens}%
1439   \fi}
1440 \ProvideTextCommand{\guillemotright}{OT1}{%
1441   \ifmmode
1442     \gg
1443   \else
```

```

1444 \save@sf@q{\nobreak
1445 \raise.2ex\hbox{$\scriptscriptstyle\gg$}\bbl@allowhyphens}%
1446 \fi}

```

Make sure that when an encoding other than OT1 or T1 is used these glyphs can still be typeset.

```

1447 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\guillemotleft}{%
1448 \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\guillemotleft}}
1449 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\guillemotright}{%
1450 \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\guillemotright}}

```

`\guilsinglleft` The single guillemets are not available in OT1 encoding. They are faked.
`\guilsinglright`

```

1451 \ProvideTextCommand{\guilsinglleft}{OT1}{%
1452 \ifmmode
1453 <%
1454 \else
1455 \save@sf@q{\nobreak
1456 \raise.2ex\hbox{$\scriptscriptstyle<$}\bbl@allowhyphens}%
1457 \fi}
1458 \ProvideTextCommand{\guilsinglright}{OT1}{%
1459 \ifmmode
1460 >%
1461 \else
1462 \save@sf@q{\nobreak
1463 \raise.2ex\hbox{$\scriptscriptstyle>$}\bbl@allowhyphens}%
1464 \fi}

```

Make sure that when an encoding other than OT1 or T1 is used these glyphs can still be typeset.

```

1465 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\guilsinglleft}{%
1466 \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\guilsinglleft}}
1467 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\guilsinglright}{%
1468 \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\guilsinglright}}

```

8.11.2 Letters

`\ij` The dutch language uses the letter ‘ij’. It is available in T1 encoded fonts, but not in the OT1 encoded fonts. Therefore we fake it for the OT1 encoding.

```

1469 \DeclareTextCommand{\ij}{OT1}{%
1470 i\kern-0.02em\bbl@allowhyphens j}
1471 \DeclareTextCommand{\IJ}{OT1}{%
1472 I\kern-0.02em\bbl@allowhyphens J}
1473 \DeclareTextCommand{\ij}{T1}{\char188}
1474 \DeclareTextCommand{\IJ}{T1}{\char156}

```

Make sure that when an encoding other than OT1 or T1 is used these glyphs can still be typeset.

```

1475 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\ij}{%
1476 \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\ij}}
1477 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\IJ}{%
1478 \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\IJ}}

```

`\dj` The croatian language needs the letters `\dj` and `\DJ`; they are available in the T1 encoding, `\DJ` but not in the OT1 encoding by default.

Some code to construct these glyphs for the OT1 encoding was made available to me by Stipcevic Mario, (stipcevic@olimp.irb.hr).

```

1479 \def\crrtic@{\hrule height0.1ex width0.3em}

```



```

1480 \def\crttic@{\hrule height0.1ex width0.33em}
1481 \def\ddj@{%
1482   \setbox0\hbox{d}\dimen@=\ht0
1483   \advance\dimen@1ex
1484   \dimen@.45\dimen@
1485   \dimen@ii\expandafter\rem@pt\the\fontdimen\@ne\font\dimen@
1486   \advance\dimen@ii.5ex
1487   \leavevmode\rlap{\raise\dimen@\hbox{\kern\dimen@ii\vbox{\crttic@}}}}
1488 \def\DDJ@{%
1489   \setbox0\hbox{D}\dimen@=.55\ht0
1490   \dimen@ii\expandafter\rem@pt\the\fontdimen\@ne\font\dimen@
1491   \advance\dimen@ii.15ex % correction for the dash position
1492   \advance\dimen@ii-.15\fontdimen7\font % correction for cmtt font
1493   \dimen\thr@@\expandafter\rem@pt\the\fontdimen7\font\dimen@
1494   \leavevmode\rlap{\raise\dimen@\hbox{\kern\dimen@ii\vbox{\crttic@}}}}
1495 %
1496 \DeclareTextCommand{\dj}{OT1}{\ddj@ d}
1497 \DeclareTextCommand{\DJ}{OT1}{\DDJ@ D}

```

Make sure that when an encoding other than OT1 or T1 is used these glyphs can still be typeset.

```

1498 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\dj}{%
1499   \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\dj}}
1500 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\DJ}{%
1501   \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\DJ}}

```

\SS For the T1 encoding \SS is defined and selects a specific glyph from the font, but for other encodings it is not available. Therefore we make it available here.

```

1502 \DeclareTextCommand{\SS}{OT1}{\SS}
1503 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\SS}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\SS}}

```

8.11.3 Shorthands for quotation marks

Shorthands are provided for a number of different quotation marks, which make them usable both outside and inside mathmode. They are defined with \ProvideTextCommandDefault, but this is very likely not required because their definitions are based on encoding dependent macros.

\glq The ‘german’ single quotes.

```

\grq 1504 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\glq}{%
1505   \textormath{\quotesinglbase}{\mbox{\quotesinglbase}}}

```

The definition of \grq depends on the fontencoding. With T1 encoding no extra kerning is needed.

```

1506 \ProvideTextCommand{\grq}{T1}{%
1507   \textormath{\textquoteleft}{\mbox{\textquoteleft}}}
1508 \ProvideTextCommand{\grq}{TU}{%
1509   \textormath{\textquoteleft}{\mbox{\textquoteleft}}}
1510 \ProvideTextCommand{\grq}{OT1}{%
1511   \save@sf@q{\kern-.0125em
1512     \textormath{\textquoteleft}{\mbox{\textquoteleft}}}%
1513     \kern.07em\relax}}
1514 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\grq}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\grq}}

```

\glqq The ‘german’ double quotes.

```

\grqq 1515 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\glqq}{%
1516   \textormath{\quotedblbase}{\mbox{\quotedblbase}}}

```

The definition of `\grqq` depends on the fontencoding. With T1 encoding no extra kerning is needed.

```
1517 \ProvideTextCommand{\grqq}{T1}{%
1518   \textormath{\textquotedblleft}{\mbox{\textquotedblleft}}}
1519 \ProvideTextCommand{\grqq}{TU}{%
1520   \textormath{\textquotedblleft}{\mbox{\textquotedblleft}}}
1521 \ProvideTextCommand{\grqq}{OT1}{%
1522   \save@sf@q{\kern-.07em
1523     \textormath{\textquotedblleft}{\mbox{\textquotedblleft}}}%
1524     \kern.07em\relax}}
1525 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\grqq}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}\grqq}
```

`\flq` The ‘french’ single guillemets.

```
\frq 1526 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\flq}{%
1527   \textormath{\guilsinglleft}{\mbox{\guilsinglleft}}}
1528 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\frq}{%
1529   \textormath{\guilsinglright}{\mbox{\guilsinglright}}}
```

`\flqq` The ‘french’ double guillemets.

```
\frqq 1530 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\flqq}{%
1531   \textormath{\guillemotleft}{\mbox{\guillemotleft}}}
1532 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\frqq}{%
1533   \textormath{\guillemotright}{\mbox{\guillemotright}}}
```

8.11.4 Umlauts and tremas

The command `\"` needs to have a different effect for different languages. For German for instance, the ‘umlaut’ should be positioned lower than the default position for placing it over the letters a, o, u, A, O and U. When placed over an e, i, E or I it can retain its normal position. For Dutch the same glyph is always placed in the lower position.

`\umlauthigh` To be able to provide both positions of `\"` we provide two commands to switch the
`\umlautlow` positioning, the default will be `\umlauthigh` (the normal positioning).

```
1534 \def\umlauthigh{%
1535   \def\bbl@umlauta##1{\leavevmode\bgroup%
1536     \expandafter\accent\csname\fontencoding dqpos\endcsname
1537     ##1\bbl@allowhyphens\egroup}%
1538   \let\bbl@umlaute\bbl@umlauta}
1539 \def\umlautlow{%
1540   \def\bbl@umlauta{\protect\lower@umlaut}}
1541 \def\umlautelow{%
1542   \def\bbl@umlaute{\protect\lower@umlaut}}
1543 \umlauthigh
```

`\lower@umlaut` The command `\lower@umlaut` is used to position the `\"` closer to the letter.

We want the umlaut character lowered, nearer to the letter. To do this we need an extra *⟨dimen⟩* register.

```
1544 \expandafter\ifx\csname U@D\endcsname\relax
1545   \csname newdimen\endcsname U@D
1546 \fi
```

The following code fools $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ ’s `make_accent` procedure about the current x-height of the font to force another placement of the umlaut character. First we have to save the current x-height of the font, because we’ll change this font dimension and this is always done globally.

Then we compute the new x-height in such a way that the umlaut character is lowered to the base character. The value of `.45ex` depends on the METAFONT parameters with which

the fonts were built. (Just try out, which value will look best.) If the new x-height is too low, it is not changed. Finally we call the `\accent` primitive, reset the old x-height and insert the base character in the argument.

```

1547 \def\lower@umlaut#1{%
1548   \leavevmode\bggroup
1549     \U@D 1ex%
1550     {\setbox\z@\hbox{%
1551       \expandafter\char\csname\fontencoding dqpos\endcsname}%
1552       \dimen@ -.45ex\advance\dimen@\ht\z@
1553       \ifdim 1ex<\dimen@ \fontdimen5\font\dimen@ \fi}%
1554     \expandafter\accent\csname\fontencoding dqpos\endcsname
1555     \fontdimen5\font\U@D #1%
1556   \egroup}

```

For all vowels we declare `\` to be a composite command which uses `\bbl@umlauta` or `\bbl@umlaute` to position the umlaut character. We need to be sure that these definitions override the ones that are provided when the package `fontenc` with option `OT1` is used. Therefore these declarations are postponed until the beginning of the document. Note these definitions only apply to some languages, but `babel` sets them for *all* languages – you may want to redefine `\bbl@umlauta` and/or `\bbl@umlaute` for a language in the corresponding `ldf` (using the `babel` switching mechanism, of course).

```

1557 \AtBeginDocument{%
1558   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\}{OT1}{a}{\bbl@umlauta{a}}%
1559   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\}{OT1}{e}{\bbl@umlaute{e}}%
1560   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\}{OT1}{i}{\bbl@umlaute{i}}%
1561   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\}{OT1}{\i}{\bbl@umlaute{i}}%
1562   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\}{OT1}{o}{\bbl@umlauta{o}}%
1563   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\}{OT1}{u}{\bbl@umlauta{u}}%
1564   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\}{OT1}{A}{\bbl@umlauta{A}}%
1565   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\}{OT1}{E}{\bbl@umlaute{E}}%
1566   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\}{OT1}{I}{\bbl@umlaute{I}}%
1567   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\}{OT1}{O}{\bbl@umlauta{O}}%
1568   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\}{OT1}{U}{\bbl@umlauta{U}}%
1569 }

```

Finally, the default is to use English as the main language.

```

1570 \ifx\l@english\@undefined
1571   \chardef\l@english\z@
1572 \fi
1573 \main@language{english}

```

8.12 Layout

Work in progress.

Layout is mainly intended to set bidi documents, but there is at least a tool useful in general.

```

1574 \bbl@trace{Bidi layout}
1575 \providecommand\IfBabelLayout[3]{#3}%
1576 \newcommand\BabelPatchSection[1]{%
1577   \@ifundefined{#1}{%
1578     \bbl@exp{\let\ss@#1>\<#1>}%
1579     \@namedef{#1}{%
1580       \ifstar{\bbl@presec@#1}%
1581       {\@dblarg{\bbl@presec@x{#1}}}}%
1582   \def\bbl@presec@x#1[#2]#3{%
1583     \bbl@exp{%

```

```

1584   \\select@language@x{\bbl@main@language}%
1585   \\@nameuse{bbl@ss@#1}%
1586   [\\foreignlanguage{\language}{\unexpanded{#2}}]%
1587   {\\foreignlanguage{\language}{\unexpanded{#3}}}%
1588   \\select@language@x{\language}}
1589 \def\bbl@presec@#1#2{%
1590   \bbl@exp{%
1591     \\select@language@x{\bbl@main@language}%
1592     \\@nameuse{bbl@ss@#1}*%
1593     {\\foreignlanguage{\language}{\unexpanded{#2}}}%
1594     \\select@language@x{\language}}
1595 \IfBabelLayout{sectioning}% at begin document ???
1596 {\BabelPatchSection{part}%
1597  \BabelPatchSection{chapter}%
1598  \BabelPatchSection{section}%
1599  \BabelPatchSection{subsection}%
1600  \BabelPatchSection{subsubsection}%
1601  \BabelPatchSection{paragraph}%
1602  \BabelPatchSection{subparagraph}%
1603  \def\babel@toc#1{%
1604    \select@language@x{\bbl@main@language}}}{%

```

Now we load definition files for engines.

```

1605 \bbl@trace{Input engine specific macros}
1606 \ifcase\bbl@engine
1607   \input txtbabel.def
1608 \or
1609   \input luababel.def
1610 \or
1611   \input xebabel.def
1612 \fi

```

8.13 Creating languages

`\babelprovide` is a general purpose tool for creating languages. Currently it just creates the language infrastructure, but in the future it will be able to read data from ini files, as well as to create variants. Unlike the `nil` pseudo-language, captions are defined, but with a warning to invite the user to provide the real string.

```

1613 \bbl@trace{Creating languages and reading ini files}
1614 \newcommand\babelprovide[2][]{%
1615   \let\bbl@savelangname\language
1616   \def\language{#2}%
1617   \let\bbl@KVP@captions\@nil
1618   \let\bbl@KVP@import\@nil
1619   \let\bbl@KVP@main\@nil
1620   \let\bbl@KVP@script\@nil
1621   \let\bbl@KVP@language\@nil
1622   \let\bbl@KVP@dir\@nil
1623   \let\bbl@KVP@hyphenrules\@nil
1624   \bbl@forkv{#1}{\bbl@csarg\def{KVP@##1}{##2}}% TODO - error handling
1625   \ifx\bbl@KVP@captions\@nil
1626     \let\bbl@KVP@captions\bbl@KVP@import
1627   \fi
1628   \bbl@ifunset{date#2}%
1629   {\bbl@provide@new{#2}}%
1630   {\bbl@ifblank{#1}%
1631    {\bbl@error
1632     {If you want to modify `#2' you must tell how in\\

```

```

1633         the optional argument. Currently there are three\\%
1634         options: captions=lang-tag, hyphenrules=lang-list\\%
1635         import=lang-tag}%
1636         {Use this macro as documented}}%
1637         {\bbl@provide@renew{#2}}}%
1638 \bbl@exp{\bbl@babelensure[exclude=\\today]{#2}}%
1639 \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@ensure@\\language}%
1640 {\bbl@exp%
1641   \\DeclareRobustCommand\<bbl@ensure@\\language>[1]{%
1642     \\foreignlanguage{\\language}%
1643     {###1}}}%
1644 }%
1645 \ifx\bbl@KVP@script\@nil\else
1646   \bbl@csarg\edef{sname@#2}{\bbl@KVP@script}%
1647 \fi
1648 \ifx\bbl@KVP@language\@nil\else
1649   \bbl@csarg\edef{lname@#2}{\bbl@KVP@language}%
1650 \fi
1651 \let\\language\bbl@savelangname}

```

Depending on whether or not the language exists, we define two macros.

```

1652 \def\bbl@provide@new#1{%
1653   \@namedef{date#1}{}% marks lang exists - required by \StartBabelCommands
1654   \@namedef{extras#1}{}%
1655   \@namedef{noextras#1}{}%
1656   \StartBabelCommands*{#1}{captions}%
1657   \ifx\bbl@KVP@captions\@nil % and also if import, implicit
1658     \def\bbl@tempb##1% elt for \bbl@captionslist
1659     \ifx##1\@empty\else
1660       \bbl@exp%
1661       \\SetString\\##1%
1662       \\bbl@nocaption{\bbl@stripslash##1}{\<#1\bbl@stripslash##1>}}%
1663       \expandafter\bbl@tempb
1664       \fi}%
1665   \expandafter\bbl@tempb\bbl@captionslist\@empty
1666   \else
1667     \bbl@read@ini{\bbl@KVP@captions}% Here all letters cat = 11
1668     \bbl@after@ini
1669     \bbl@savestrings
1670   \fi
1671   \StartBabelCommands*{#1}{date}%
1672   \ifx\bbl@KVP@import\@nil
1673     \bbl@exp%
1674     \\SetString\\today{\bbl@nocaption{today}{\<#1today>}}}%
1675   \else
1676     \bbl@savetoday
1677     \bbl@savedate
1678   \fi
1679   \EndBabelCommands
1680   \bbl@exp%
1681   \def\<#1hyphenmins>{%
1682     {\bbl@ifunset{\bbl@lfthm@#1}{2}{\@nameuse{\bbl@lfthm@#1}}}%
1683     {\bbl@ifunset{\bbl@rgthm@#1}{3}{\@nameuse{\bbl@rgthm@#1}}}}%
1684   \bbl@provide@hyphens{#1}%
1685   \ifx\bbl@KVP@main\@nil\else
1686     \expandafter\main@language\expandafter{#1}%
1687   \fi}
1688 \def\bbl@provide@renew#1{%
1689   \ifx\bbl@KVP@captions\@nil\else

```

```

1690 \StartBabelCommands*{#1}{captions}%
1691 \bbl@read@ini{\bbl@KVP@captions}% Here all letters cat = 11
1692 \bbl@after@ini
1693 \bbl@savestrings
1694 \EndBabelCommands
1695 \fi
1696 \ifx\bbl@KVP@import\@nil\else
1697 \StartBabelCommands*{#1}{date}%
1698 \bbl@savetoday
1699 \bbl@savestate
1700 \EndBabelCommands
1701 \fi
1702 \bbl@provide@hyphens{#1}}

```

The hyphenrules option is handled with an auxiliary macro.

```

1703 \def\bbl@provide@hyphens#1{%
1704 \let\bbl@tempa\relax
1705 \ifx\bbl@KVP@hyphenrules\@nil\else
1706 \bbl@replace\bbl@KVP@hyphenrules{ }{,}%
1707 \bbl@foreach\bbl@KVP@hyphenrules{%
1708 \ifx\bbl@tempa\relax % if not yet found
1709 \bbl@ifsamestring{##1}{+}%
1710 {{\bbl@exp{\addlanguage\<l@##1>}}}%
1711 }}%
1712 \bbl@ifunset{l@##1}%
1713 {}%
1714 {\bbl@exp{\let\bbl@tempa\<l@##1>}}%
1715 \fi}%
1716 \fi
1717 \ifx\bbl@tempa\relax % if no opt or no language in opt found
1718 \ifx\bbl@KVP@import\@nil\else % if importing
1719 \bbl@exp{% and hyphenrules is not empty
1720 \bbl@ifblank{\@nameuse{bbl@hyphr@#1}}%
1721 {}%
1722 {\let\bbl@tempa\<l@\@nameuse{bbl@hyphr@\language}\>}}%
1723 \fi
1724 \fi
1725 \bbl@ifunset{bbl@tempa}% ie, relax or undefined
1726 {\bbl@ifunset{l@#1}% no hyphenrules found - fallback
1727 {\bbl@exp{\adddialect\<l@#1>\language}}%
1728 {}% so, l@<lang> is ok - nothing to do
1729 {\bbl@exp{\adddialect\<l@#1>\bbl@tempa}}% found in opt list or ini

```

The reader of ini files. There are 3 possible cases: a section name (in the form [. . .]), a comment (starting with ;) and a key/value pair. *TODO - Work in progress.*

```

1730 \def\bbl@read@ini#1{%
1731 \openin1=babel-#1.ini
1732 \ifeof1
1733 \bbl@error
1734 {There is no ini file for the requested language\%
1735 (#1). Perhaps you misspelled it or your installation\%
1736 is not complete.}%
1737 {Fix the name or reinstall babel.}%
1738 \else
1739 \let\bbl@section\@empty
1740 \let\bbl@savestrings\@empty
1741 \let\bbl@savetoday\@empty
1742 \let\bbl@savestate\@empty
1743 \let\bbl@inireader\bbl@iniskip

```

```

1744 \bbl@info{Importing data from babel-#1.ini for \language}%
1745 \loop
1746 \if T\ifeof1F\fi T\relax % Trick, because inside \loop
1747 \endlinechar\m@ne
1748 \read1 to \bbl@line
1749 \endlinechar\^^M
1750 \ifx\bbl@line\empty\else
1751 \expandafter\bbl@iniline\bbl@line\bbl@iniline
1752 \fi
1753 \repeat
1754 \fi}
1755 \def\bbl@iniline#1\bbl@iniline{%
1756 \@ifnextchar[\bbl@inisecl{\@ifnextchar;\bbl@iniskip\bbl@inireader}#1\@@}% ]

```

The special cases for comment lines and sections are handled by the two following commands. In sections, we provide the possibility to take extra actions at the end or at the start (TODO - but note the last section is not ended). By default, key=val pairs are ignored.

```

1757 \def\bbl@iniskip#1\@@{% if starts with ;
1758 \def\bbl@inisecl[#1]#2\@@{% if starts with opening bracket
1759 \@nameuse{\bbl@secpost@\bbl@section}% ends previous section
1760 \def\bbl@section[#1]%
1761 \@nameuse{\bbl@secpre@\bbl@section}% starts current section
1762 \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@secline@#1}%
1763 {\let\bbl@inireader\bbl@iniskip}%
1764 {\bbl@exp{\let\\bbl@inireader<\bbl@secline@#1>}}}

```

Reads a key=val line and stores the trimmed val in \bbl@@kv@<section>.<key>.

```

1765 \def\bbl@inikv#1=#2\@@{% key=value
1766 \bbl@trim\def\bbl@tempa{#1}%
1767 \bbl@trim\toks@{#2}%
1768 \bbl@csarg\edef{@kv@\bbl@section.\bbl@tempa}{\the\toks@}}

```

The previous assignments are local, so we need to export them. If the value is empty, we can provide a default value.

```

1769 \def\bbl@exportkey#1#2#3{%
1770 \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@@kv@#2}%
1771 {\bbl@csarg\gdef{#1@\language}{#3}}%
1772 {\expandafter\ifx\csname\bbl@@kv@#2\endcsname\empty
1773 \bbl@csarg\gdef{#1@\language}{#3}}%
1774 \else
1775 \bbl@exp{\global\let<\bbl@#1@\language>\<\bbl@@kv@#2>}%
1776 \fi}}

```

Key-value pairs are treated differently depending on the section in the ini file. The following macros are the readers for identification and typography.

```

1777 \let\bbl@secline@identification\bbl@inikv
1778 \def\bbl@secpost@identification{%
1779 \bbl@exportkey{lname}{identification.name.english}{}%
1780 \bbl@exportkey{lhcp}{identification.tag.bcp47}{}%
1781 \bbl@exportkey{lotf}{identification.tag.opentype}{dflt}%
1782 \bbl@exportkey{sname}{identification.script.name}{}%
1783 \bbl@exportkey{sbcpr}{identification.script.tag.bcp47}{}%
1784 \bbl@exportkey{sotf}{identification.script.tag.opentype}{DFLT}}
1785 \let\bbl@secline@typography\bbl@inikv
1786 \def\bbl@after@ini{%
1787 \bbl@exportkey{lftm}{typography.lefthyphenmin}{2}%
1788 \bbl@exportkey{rgtm}{typography.righthyphenmin}{3}%
1789 \bbl@exportkey{hyphr}{typography.hyphenrules}{}%
1790 \def\bbl@tempa{0.9}%

```

```

1791 \bbl@csarg\ifx{@kv@identification.version}\bbl@tempa
1792 \bbl@warning{%
1793   The '\language' date format may not be suitable\\%
1794   for proper typesetting, and therefore it very likely will\\%
1795   change in a future release. Reported}%
1796 \fi
1797 \bbl@toglobal\bbl@savetoday
1798 \bbl@toglobal\bbl@savestate}

```

Now captions and captions.licr, depending on the engine. And also for dates. They rely on a few auxiliary macros.

```

1799 \ifcase\bbl@engine
1800 \bbl@csarg\def{secline@captions.licr}#1=#2\@@{%
1801   \bbl@ini@captions@aux{#1}{#2}}
1802 \bbl@csarg\def{secline@date.gregorian}#1=#2\@@{% for defaults
1803   \bbl@ini@dategreg#1...\relax{#2}}
1804 \bbl@csarg\def{secline@date.gregorian.licr}#1=#2\@@{% override
1805   \bbl@ini@dategreg#1...\relax{#2}}
1806 \else
1807 \def\bbl@secline@captions#1=#2\@@{%
1808   \bbl@ini@captions@aux{#1}{#2}}
1809 \bbl@csarg\def{secline@date.gregorian}#1=#2\@@{%
1810   \bbl@ini@dategreg#1...\relax{#2}}
1811 \fi

```

The auxiliary macro for captions define \<caption>name.

```

1812 \def\bbl@ini@captions@aux#1#2{%
1813   \bbl@trim@def\bbl@tempa{#1}%
1814   \bbl@ifblank{#2}%
1815   {\bbl@exp{%
1816     \toks@{\bbl@nocaption{\bbl@tempa}\<\language\bbl@tempa name>}}}%
1817   {\bbl@trim\toks@{#2}}}%
1818 \bbl@exp{%
1819   \bbl@add\bbl@savestrings{%
1820     \SetString\<\bbl@tempa name>{\the\toks@}}}%

```

But dates are more complex. The full date format is stores in date.gregorian, so we must read it in non-Unicode engines, too.

```

1821 \bbl@csarg\def{secpred@date.gregorian.licr}{%
1822   \ifcase\bbl@engine\let\bbl@savestate\empty\fi}
1823 \def\bbl@ini@dategreg#1.#2.#3.#4\relax#5% TODO - ignore with 'captions'
1824 \bbl@trim@def\bbl@tempa{#1.#2}%
1825 \bbl@ifsamestring{\bbl@tempa}{months.wide}%
1826 {\bbl@trim@def\bbl@tempa{#3}%
1827   \bbl@trim\toks@{#5}%
1828   \bbl@exp{%
1829     \bbl@add\bbl@savestate{%
1830       \SetString\<month\romannumeral\bbl@tempa name>{\the\toks@}}}%
1831   {\bbl@ifsamestring{\bbl@tempa}{date.long}%
1832     {\bbl@trim@def\bbl@toreplace{#5}%
1833       \bbl@TG@date
1834       \global\bbl@csarg\let{date@\language}\bbl@toreplace
1835       \bbl@exp{%
1836         \gdef\<\language date>{\protect\<\language date >}}%
1837         \gdef\<\language date >####1####2####3%
1838         \bbl@usedategrouptrue
1839         \<\bbl@ensure@\language>{%
1840           \<\bbl@date@\language>{####1}{####2}{####3}}}%
1841         \bbl@add\bbl@savetoday}%

```



```

1842      \\SetString\\today{%
1843      <\language name date>{\\the\year}{\\the\month}{\\the\day}}}%
1844      {}

```

Dates will require some macros for the basic formatting. They may be redefined by language, so “semi-public” names (camel case) are used. Oddly enough, the CLDR places particles like “de” inconsistently in either in the date or in the month name.

```

1845 \newcommand\BabelDateSpace{\nobreakspace}
1846 \newcommand\BabelDateDot{. \@}
1847 \newcommand\BabelDated[1]{\number#1}
1848 \newcommand\BabelDatedd[1]{\ifnum#1<10 0\fi\number#1}
1849 \newcommand\BabelDateM[1]{\number#1}
1850 \newcommand\BabelDateMM[1]{\ifnum#1<10 0\fi\number#1}
1851 \newcommand\BabelDateMMM[1]{%
1852   \csname month\romannumeral#1name\endcsname}%
1853 \newcommand\BabelDatey[1]{\number#1}%
1854 \newcommand\BabelDateyy[1]{%
1855   \ifnum#1<10 0\number#1 %
1856   \else\ifnum#1<100 \number#1 %
1857   \else\ifnum#1<1000 \expandafter\@gobble\number#1 %
1858   \else\ifnum#1<10000 \expandafter\@gobbletwo\number#1 %
1859   \else
1860     \bbl@error
1861     {Currently two-digit years are restricted to the\
1862     range 0-9999.}%
1863     {There is little you can do. Sorry.}%
1864     \fi\fi\fi\fi}}
1865 \newcommand\BabelDateyyyy[1]{\number#1}
1866 \def\bbl@replace@finish@iii#1{%
1867   \bbl@exp{\def\#1####1####2####3{\the\toks@}}
1868 \def\bbl@TG@date{%
1869   \bbl@replace\bbl@toreplace{[ ]}{\BabelDateSpace}}%
1870   \bbl@replace\bbl@toreplace{[.]}{\BabelDateDot}}%
1871   \bbl@replace\bbl@toreplace{[d]}{\BabelDated{####3}}%
1872   \bbl@replace\bbl@toreplace{[dd]}{\BabelDatedd{####3}}%
1873   \bbl@replace\bbl@toreplace{[M]}{\BabelDateM{####2}}%
1874   \bbl@replace\bbl@toreplace{[MM]}{\BabelDateMM{####2}}%
1875   \bbl@replace\bbl@toreplace{[MMM]}{\BabelDateMMM{####2}}%
1876   \bbl@replace\bbl@toreplace{[y]}{\BabelDatey{####1}}%
1877   \bbl@replace\bbl@toreplace{[yy]}{\BabelDateyy{####1}}%
1878   \bbl@replace\bbl@toreplace{[yyyy]}{\BabelDateyyyy{####1}}%
1879 % Note after \bbl@replace \toks@ contains the resulting string.
1880 % TODO - Using this implicit behavior doesn't seem a good idea.
1881   \bbl@replace@finish@iii\bbl@toreplace}

```

Language and Script values to be used when defining a font or setting the direction are set with the following macros.

```

1882 \def\bbl@provide@lsys#1{%
1883   \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@lname@#1}%
1884   {\bbl@ini@ids{#1}}%
1885   {}%
1886   \bbl@csarg\let{lsys@#1}\@empty
1887   \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@sname@#1}{\bbl@csarg\gdef{sname@#1}{Default}}}%
1888   \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@sotf@#1}{\bbl@csarg\gdef{sotf@#1}{DFLT}}}%
1889   \bbl@csarg\bbl@add@list{lsys@#1}{Script=\bbl@cs{sname@#1}}%
1890   \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@lname@#1}}%
1891   {\bbl@csarg\bbl@add@list{lsys@#1}{Language=\bbl@cs{lname@#1}}}%
1892   \bbl@csarg\bbl@to@global{lsys@#1}}%
1893 % \bbl@exp{% TODO - should be global

```

```

1894 % \<keys_if_exist:nnF>{fontspec-opentype/Script}{\bbl@cs{sname@#1}}}%
1895 % {\newfontscript{\bbl@cs{sname@#1}}{\bbl@cs{sotf@#1}}}%
1896 % \<keys_if_exist:nnF>{fontspec-opentype/Language}{\bbl@cs{lname@#1}}}%
1897 % {\newfontlanguage{\bbl@cs{lname@#1}}{\bbl@cs{lotf@#1}}}%

```

The following ini reader ignores everything but the identification section. It is called when a font is defined (ie, when the language is first selected) to know which script/language must be enabled. This means we must make sure a few characters are not active. The ini is not read directly, but with a proxy tex file named as the language.

```

1898 \def\bbl@ini@ids#1{%
1899   \def\BabelBeforeIni##1##2{%
1900     \begingroup
1901       \bbl@add\bbl@secpost@identification{\closein1 }%
1902       \catcode`\[=12 \catcode`\]=12 \catcode`\==12
1903       \bbl@read@ini{##1}%
1904     \endgroup}% boxed, to avoid extra spaces:
1905   {\setbox\z@\hbox{\InputIfFileExists{babel-#1.tex}{}}}%

```

9 The kernel of Babel (babel.def, only L^AT_EX)

9.1 The redefinition of the style commands

The rest of the code in this file can only be processed by L^AT_EX, so we check the current format. If it is plain T_EX, processing should stop here. But, because of the need to limit the scope of the definition of `\format`, a macro that is used locally in the following `\if` statement, this comparison is done inside a group. To prevent T_EX from complaining about an unclosed group, the processing of the command `\endinput` is deferred until after the group is closed. This is accomplished by the command `\aftergroup`.

```

1906 {\def\format{plain}
1907 \ifx\fmtname\format
1908 \else
1909   \def\format{LaTeX2e}
1910   \ifx\fmtname\format
1911   \else
1912     \aftergroup\endinput
1913   \fi
1914 \fi}

```

9.2 Cross referencing macros

The L^AT_EX book states:

The *key* argument is any sequence of letters, digits, and punctuation symbols; upper- and lowercase letters are regarded as different.

When the above quote should still be true when a document is typeset in a language that has active characters, special care has to be taken of the category codes of these characters when they appear in an argument of the cross referencing macros.

When a cross referencing command processes its argument, all tokens in this argument should be character tokens with category ‘letter’ or ‘other’.

The only way to accomplish this in most cases is to use the trick described in the T_EXbook [2] (Appendix D, page 382). The primitive `\meaning` applied to a token expands to the current meaning of this token. For example, ‘`\meaning\A`’ with `\A` defined as ‘`\def\A#1{\B}`’ expands to the characters ‘`macro:#1->\B`’ with all category codes set to ‘other’ or ‘space’.

`\newlabel` The macro `\label` writes a line with a `\newlabel` command into the `.aux` file to define labels.

```
1915 %\bbl@redefine\newlabel#1#2{%
1916 % \@safe@activestruelorg@newlabel{#1}{#2}\@safe@activesfalse}
```

`\@newl@bel` We need to change the definition of the \LaTeX -internal macro `\@newl@bel`. This is needed because we need to make sure that shorthand characters expand to their non-active version.

The following package options control which macros are to be redefined.

```
1917 <<{*More package options}>> ≡
1918 \DeclareOption{safe=none}{\let\bbl@opt@safe\@empty}
1919 \DeclareOption{safe=bib}{\def\bbl@opt@safe{B}}
1920 \DeclareOption{safe=ref}{\def\bbl@opt@safe{R}}
1921 <</More package options>>
```

First we open a new group to keep the changed setting of `\protect` local and then we set the `@safe@actives` switch to true to make sure that any shorthand that appears in any of the arguments immediately expands to its non-active self.

```
1922 \bbl@trace{Cross referencing macros}
1923 \ifx\bbl@opt@safe\@empty\else
1924 \def\@newl@bel#1#2#3{%
1925 {\@safe@activestruel
1926 \bbl@ifunset{#1@#2}%
1927 \relax
1928 {\gdef\@multiplelabels{%
1929 \@latex@warning@no@line{There were multiply-defined labels}}%
1930 \@latex@warning@no@line{Label `#2' multiply defined}}%
1931 \global\@namedef{#1@#2}{#3}}}
```

`\@testdef` An internal \LaTeX macro used to test if the labels that have been written on the `.aux` file have changed. It is called by the `\enddocument` macro. This macro needs to be completely rewritten, using `\meaning`. The reason for this is that in some cases the expansion of `\#1@#2` contains the same characters as the `#3`; but the character codes differ. Therefore \LaTeX keeps reporting that the labels may have changed.

```
1932 \CheckCommand*\@testdef[3]{%
1933 \def\reserved@a{#3}%
1934 \expandafter\ifx\csname#1@#2\endcsname\reserved@a
1935 \else
1936 \@tempwattrue
1937 \fi}
```

Now that we made sure that `\@testdef` still has the same definition we can rewrite it. First we make the shorthands ‘safe’.

```
1938 \def\@testdef#1#2#3{%
1939 \@safe@activestruel
```

Then we use `\bbl@tempa` as an ‘alias’ for the macro that contains the label which is being checked.

```
1940 \expandafter\let\expandafter\bbl@tempa\csname #1@#2\endcsname
```

Then we define `\bbl@tempb` just as `\@newl@bel` does it.

```
1941 \def\bbl@tempb{#3}%
1942 \@safe@activesfalse
```

When the label is defined we replace the definition of `\bbl@tempa` by its meaning.

```
1943 \ifx\bbl@tempa\relax
1944 \else
1945 \edef\bbl@tempa{\expandafter\strip@prefix\meaning\bbl@tempa}%
1946 \fi
```

We do the same for \bbl@tempb.

```
1947 \edef\bbl@tempb{\expandafter\strip@prefix\meaning\bbl@tempb}%
```

If the label didn't change, \bbl@tempa and \bbl@tempb should be identical macros.

```
1948 \ifx\bbl@tempa\bbl@tempb
1949 \else
1950 \@tempswatrue
1951 \fi}
1952 \fi
```

\ref The same holds for the macro \ref that references a label and \pageref to reference a page. So we redefine \ref and \pageref. While we change these macros, we make them robust as well (if they weren't already) to prevent problems if they should become expanded at the wrong moment.

```
1953 \bbl@xin@{R}\bbl@opt@safe
1954 \ifin@
1955 \bbl@redefineroobust\ref#1{%
1956 \@safe@activetrue\org@ref{#1}\@safe@activesfalse}
1957 \bbl@redefineroobust\pageref#1{%
1958 \@safe@activetrue\org@pageref{#1}\@safe@activesfalse}
1959 \else
1960 \let\org@ref\ref
1961 \let\org@pageref\pageref
1962 \fi
```

\@citex The macro used to cite from a bibliography, \cite, uses an internal macro, \@citex. It is this internal macro that picks up the argument(s), so we redefine this internal macro and leave \cite alone. The first argument is used for typesetting, so the shorthands need only be deactivated in the second argument.

```
1963 \bbl@xin@{B}\bbl@opt@safe
1964 \ifin@
1965 \bbl@redefine\@citex[#1]#2{%
1966 \@safe@activetrue\edef\@tempa{#2}\@safe@activesfalse
1967 \org@@citex[#1]{\@tempa}}
```

Unfortunately, the packages natbib and cite need a different definition of \@citex... To begin with, natbib has a definition for \@citex with *three* arguments... We only know that a package is loaded when \begin{document} is executed, so we need to postpone the different redefinition.

```
1968 \AtBeginDocument{%
1969 \@ifpackageloaded{natbib}{%
```

Notice that we use \def here instead of \bbl@redefine because \org@@citex is already defined and we don't want to overwrite that definition (it would result in parameter stack overflow because of a circular definition).

(Recent versions of natbib change dynamically \@citex, so PR4087 doesn't seem fixable in a simple way. Just load natbib before.)

```
1970 \def\@citex[#1][#2]#3{%
1971 \@safe@activetrue\edef\@tempa{#3}\@safe@activesfalse
1972 \org@@citex[#1][#2]{\@tempa}}%
1973 }{}}
```

The package cite has a definition of \@citex where the shorthands need to be turned off in both arguments.

```
1974 \AtBeginDocument{%
1975 \@ifpackageloaded{cite}{%
1976 \def\@citex[#1]#2{%
```

```

1977      \@safe@activetrue\org@@citex[#1]{#2}\@safe@activfalse}%
1978      }{}}

\nocite The macro \nocite which is used to instruct BiTEX to extract uncited references from the
        database.

1979 \bbl@redefine\nocite#1{%
1980   \@safe@activetrue\org@nocite{#1}\@safe@activfalse}

\bibcite The macro that is used in the .aux file to define citation labels. When packages such as
natbib or cite are not loaded its second argument is used to typeset the citation label. In
that case, this second argument can contain active characters but is used in an
environment where \@safe@activetrue is in effect. This switch needs to be reset inside
the \hbox which contains the citation label. In order to determine during .aux file
processing which definition of \bibcite is needed we define \bibcite in such a way that
it redefines itself with the proper definition.

1981 \bbl@redefine\bibcite{%

        We call \bbl@cite@choice to select the proper definition for \bibcite. This new
        definition is then activated.

1982 \bbl@cite@choice
1983 \bibcite}

\bbl@bibcite The macro \bbl@bibcite holds the definition of \bibcite needed when neither natbib
nor cite is loaded.

1984 \def\bbl@bibcite#1#2{%
1985   \org@bibcite{#1}{\@safe@activfalse#2}}

\bbl@cite@choice The macro \bbl@cite@choice determines which definition of \bibcite is needed.

1986 \def\bbl@cite@choice{%

        First we give \bibcite its default definition.

1987 \global\let\bibcite\bbl@bibcite

        Then, when natbib is loaded we restore the original definition of \bibcite.

1988 \@ifpackageloaded{natbib}{\global\let\bibcite\org@bibcite}{}%

        For cite we do the same.

1989 \@ifpackageloaded{cite}{\global\let\bibcite\org@bibcite}{}%

        Make sure this only happens once.

1990 \global\let\bbl@cite@choice\relax}

        When a document is run for the first time, no .aux file is available, and \bibcite will not
        yet be properly defined. In this case, this has to happen before the document starts.

1991 \AtBeginDocument{\bbl@cite@choice}

\@bibitem One of the two internal LaTEX macros called by \bibitem that write the citation label on the
        .aux file.

1992 \bbl@redefine\@bibitem#1{%
1993   \@safe@activetrue\org@@bibitem{#1}\@safe@activfalse}
1994 \else
1995 \let\org@nocite\nocite
1996 \let\org@@citex\@citex
1997 \let\org@bibcite\bibcite
1998 \let\org@@bibitem\@bibitem
1999 \fi

```

9.3 Marks

`\markright` Because the output routine is asynchronous, we must pass the current language attribute to the head lines, together with the text that is put into them. To achieve this we need to adapt the definition of `\markright` and `\markboth` somewhat.

We check whether the argument is empty; if it is, we just make sure the scratch token register is empty. Next, we store the argument to `\markright` in the scratch token register. This way these commands will not be expanded later, and we make sure that the text is typeset using the correct language settings. While doing so, we make sure that active characters that may end up in the mark are not disabled by the output routine kicking in while `\@safe@activestrue` is in effect.

```

2000 \bbl@trace{Marks}
2001 \IfBabelLayout{sectioning}
2002   {\ifx\bbl@opt@headfoot\@nnil
2003     \g@addto@macro\@resetactivechars{%
2004       \set@typeset@protect
2005       \expandafter\select@language@x\expandafter{\bbl@main@language}%
2006       \let\protect\noexpand}%
2007   \fi}
2008   {\bbl@redefine\markright#1{%
2009     \bbl@ifblank{#1}%
2010     {\org@markright{}}%
2011     {\toks@{#1}%
2012       \bbl@exp{%
2013         \\org@markright{\\protect\\foreignlanguage{\language}\language}%
2014         {\\protect\\bbl@restore@actives\the\toks@}}}}}
```

`\markboth` The definition of `\markboth` is equivalent to that of `\markright`, except that we need two token registers. The documentclasses report and book define and set the headings for the page. While doing so they also store a copy of `\markboth` in `\@mkboth`. Therefore we need to check whether `\@mkboth` has already been set. If so we need to do that again with the new definition of `\markboth`.

`\@mkboth`

```

2015 \ifx\@mkboth\markboth
2016   \def\bbl@tempc{\let\@mkboth\markboth}
2017 \else
2018   \def\bbl@tempc{}
2019 \fi
```

Now we can start the new definition of `\markboth`

```

2020 \bbl@redefine\markboth#1#2{%
2021   \protected@edef\bbl@tempb##1{%
2022     \protect\foreignlanguage{\language}\protect\bbl@restore@actives##1}}%
2023   \bbl@ifblank{#1}%
2024   {\toks@{}}%
2025   {\toks@\expandafter{\bbl@tempb{#1}}}%
2026   \bbl@ifblank{#2}%
2027   {\@temptokena{}}%
2028   {\@temptokena\expandafter{\bbl@tempb{#2}}}%
2029   \bbl@exp{\\org@markboth{\the\toks@}{\the\@temptokena}}}
```

and copy it to `\@mkboth` if necessary.

```

2030 \bbl@tempc} % end \IfBabelLayout
```

9.4 Preventing clashes with other packages

9.4.1 ifthen

`\ifthenelse` Sometimes a document writer wants to create a special effect depending on the page a certain fragment of text appears on. This can be achieved by the following piece of code:

```
\ifthenelse{\isodd{\pageref{some:label}}}{%
    {code for odd pages}%
    {code for even pages}%
}
```

In order for this to work the argument of `\isodd` needs to be fully expandable. With the above redefinition of `\pageref` it is not in the case of this example. To overcome that, we add some code to the definition of `\ifthenelse` to make things work.

The first thing we need to do is check if the package `ifthen` is loaded. This should be done at `\begin{document}` time.

```
2031 \bbl@trace{Preventing clashes with other packages}
2032 \bbl@xin@{R}\bbl@opt@safe
2033 \ifin@
2034 \AtBeginDocument{%
2035     \@ifpackageloaded{ifthen}{%
```

Then we can redefine `\ifthenelse`:

```
2036     \bbl@redefine@long\ifthenelse#1#2#3{%
```

We want to revert the definition of `\pageref` and `\ref` to their original definition for the first argument of `\ifthenelse`, so we first need to store their current meanings.

```
2037     \let\bbl@temp@pref\pageref
2038     \let\pageref\org@pageref
2039     \let\bbl@temp@ref\ref
2040     \let\ref\org@ref
```

Then we can set the `\@safe@actives` switch and call the original `\ifthenelse`. In order to be able to use shorthands in the second and third arguments of `\ifthenelse` the resetting of the switch *and* the definition of `\pageref` happens inside those arguments. When the package wasn't loaded we do nothing.

```
2041     \@safe@activestrue
2042     \org@ifthenelse{#1}%
2043     {\let\pageref\bbl@temp@pref
2044     \let\ref\bbl@temp@ref
2045     \@safe@activesfalse
2046     #2}%
2047     {\let\pageref\bbl@temp@pref
2048     \let\ref\bbl@temp@ref
2049     \@safe@activesfalse
2050     #3}%
2051     }%
2052     }{}%
2053 }
```

9.4.2 varioref

`\@@vpageref` When the package `varioref` is in use we need to modify its internal command `\@@vpageref`
`\vrefpagenum` in order to prevent problems when an active character ends up in the argument of `\vref`.

```
\Ref 2054 \AtBeginDocument{%
2055     \@ifpackageloaded{varioref}{%
2056         \bbl@redefine\@@vpageref#1[#2]#3{%
```

```

2057      \@safe@activetrue
2058      \org@@@vpageref{#1}{#2}{#3}%
2059      \@safe@activesfalse}%

```

The same needs to happen for \vrefpagemum.

```

2060      \bbl@redefine\vrefpagemum#1#2{%
2061      \@safe@activetrue
2062      \org@vrefpagemum{#1}{#2}%
2063      \@safe@activesfalse}%

```

The package varioref defines \Ref to be a robust command wich uppercases the first character of the reference text. In order to be able to do that it needs to access the expandable form of \ref. So we employ a little trick here. We redefine the (internal) command \Ref_ to call \org@ref instead of \ref. The disadvantage of this solution is that whenever the derfinition of \Ref changes, this definition needs to be updated as well.

```

2064      \expandafter\def\csname Ref \endcsname#1{%
2065      \protected@edef\@tempa{\org@ref{#1}}\expandafter\MakeUppercase\@tempa}
2066      }{}%
2067      }
2068 \fi

```

9.4.3 hhline

\hhline Delaying the activation of the shorthand characters has introduced a problem with the hhline package. The reason is that it uses the “:” character which is made active by the french support in babel. Therefore we need to *reload* the package when the “:” is an active character.

So at \begin{document} we check whether hhline is loaded.

```

2069 \AtEndOfPackage{%
2070 \AtBeginDocument{%
2071 \ifpackageloaded{hhline}%

```

Then we check whether the expansion of \normal@char: is not equal to \relax.

```

2072      {\expandafter\ifx\csname normal@char\string\endcsname\relax
2073      \else

```

In that case we simply reload the package. Note that this happens *after* the category code of the @-sign has been changed to other, so we need to temporarily change it to letter again.

```

2074      \makeatletter
2075      \def\@currname{hhline}\input{hhline.sty}\makeatother
2076      \fi}%
2077      {}}}

```

9.4.4 hyperref

\pdfstringdefDisableCommands A number of interworking problems between babel and hyperref are tackled by hyperref itself. The following code was introduced to prevent some annoying warnings but it broke bookmarks. This was quickly fixed in hyperref, which essentially made it no-op. However, it will not removed for the moment because hyperref is expecting it.

```

2078 \AtBeginDocument{%
2079 \ifx\pdfstringdefDisableCommands\undefined\else
2080 \pdfstringdefDisableCommands{\languageshortands{system}}%
2081 \fi}

```


9.4.5 fancyhdr

`\FOREIGNLANGUAGE` The package `fancyhdr` treats the running head and foot lines somewhat differently as the standard classes. A symptom of this is that the command `\foreignlanguage` which `babel` adds to the marks can end up inside the argument of `\MakeUppercase`. To prevent unexpected results we need to define `\FOREIGNLANGUAGE` here.

```
2082 \DeclareRobustCommand{\FOREIGNLANGUAGE}[1]{%
2083   \lowercase{\foreignlanguage{#1}}}
```

`\substitutefontfamily` The command `\substitutefontfamily` creates an `.fd` file on the fly. The first argument is an encoding mnemonic, the second and third arguments are font family names.

```
2084 \def\substitutefontfamily#1#2#3{%
2085   \lowercase{\immediate\openout15=#1#2.fd\relax}%
2086   \immediate\write15{%
2087     \string\ProvidesFile{#1#2.fd}%
2088     [\the\year/\two@digits{\the\month}/\two@digits{\the\day}
2089     \space generated font description file]^J
2090     \string\DeclareFontFamily{#1}{#2}{}^J
2091     \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{m}{n}{<->ssub * #3/m/n}{}^J
2092     \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{m}{it}{<->ssub * #3/m/it}{}^J
2093     \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{m}{sl}{<->ssub * #3/m/sl}{}^J
2094     \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{m}{sc}{<->ssub * #3/m/sc}{}^J
2095     \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{b}{n}{<->ssub * #3/bx/n}{}^J
2096     \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{b}{it}{<->ssub * #3/bx/it}{}^J
2097     \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{b}{sl}{<->ssub * #3/bx/sl}{}^J
2098     \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{b}{sc}{<->ssub * #3/bx/sc}{}^J
2099   }%
2100   \closeout15
2101 }
```

This command should only be used in the preamble of a document.

```
2102 \@onlypreamble\substitutefontfamily
```

9.5 Encoding and fonts

Because documents may use non-ASCII font encodings, we make sure that the logos of \TeX and \LaTeX always come out in the right encoding. There is a list of non-ASCII encodings. Unfortunately, `fontenc` deletes its package options, so we must guess which encodings has been loaded by traversing `\@filelist` to search for `\enc.def`. If a non-ASCII has been loaded, we define versions of `\TeX` and `\LaTeX` for them using `\ensureascii`. The default ASCII encoding is `set`, too (in reverse order): the “main” encoding (when the document begins), the last loaded, or `OT1`.

```
\ensureascii
```

```
2103 \bbl@trace{Encoding and fonts}
2104 \newcommand\BabelNonASCII{LGR,X2,OT2,OT3,OT6,LHE,LWN,LMA,LMC,LMS,LMU,}
2105 \let\org@TeX\TeX
2106 \let\org@LaTeX\LaTeX
2107 \let\ensureascii\@firstofone
2108 \AtBeginDocument{%
2109   \in@false
2110   \bbl@foreach\BabelNonASCII{% is there a non-ascii enc?
2111     \ifin@false
2112       \lowercase{\bbl@xin@{, #1enc.def,}{, \@filelist,}}%
2113     \fi}%
2114   \ifin@ % if a non-ascii has been loaded
2115     \def\ensureascii#1{{\fontencoding{OT1}\selectfont#1}}%
```

```

2116 \DeclareTextCommandDefault{\TeX}{\org@TeX}%
2117 \DeclareTextCommandDefault{\LaTeX}{\org@LaTeX}%
2118 \def\bbl@tempb#1\@@{\uppercase{\bbl@tempc#1}ENC.DEF\@empty\@@}%
2119 \def\bbl@tempc#1ENC.DEF#2\@@{%
2120   \ifx\@empty#2\else
2121     \bbl@ifunset{T@#1}%
2122     {}%
2123     {\bbl@xin@{, #1, }{\BabelNonASCII,}%
2124     \ifin@
2125       \DeclareTextCommand{\TeX}{#1}{\ensureascii{\org@TeX}}%
2126       \DeclareTextCommand{\LaTeX}{#1}{\ensureascii{\org@LaTeX}}%
2127     \else
2128       \def\ensureascii##1{{\fontencoding{#1}\selectfont##1}}%
2129       \fi}%
2130   \fi}%
2131 \bbl@foreach\@filelist{\bbl@tempb#1\@@}% TODO - \@@ de mas??
2132 \bbl@xin@{,\cf@encoding,}{,\BabelNonASCII,}%
2133 \ifin@
2134   \edef\ensureascii#1{%
2135     \noexpand\fontencoding{\cf@encoding}\noexpand\selectfont#1}%
2136   \fi
2137 \fi}

```

Now comes the old deprecated stuff (with a little change in 3.9l, for fontspec). The first thing we need to do is to determine, at `\begin{document}`, which latin fontencoding to use.

`\latinencoding` When text is being typeset in an encoding other than ‘latin’ (OT1 or T1), it would be nice to still have Roman numerals come out in the Latin encoding. So we first assume that the current encoding at the end of processing the package is the Latin encoding.

```

2138 \AtEndOfPackage{\edef\latinencoding{\cf@encoding}}

```

But this might be overruled with a later loading of the package fontenc. Therefore we check at the execution of `\begin{document}` whether it was loaded with the T1 option. The normal way to do this (using `\ifpackageloaded`) is disabled for this package. Now we have to revert to parsing the internal macro `\@filelist` which contains all the filenames loaded.

```

2139 \AtBeginDocument{%
2140   \@ifpackageloaded{fontspec}%
2141   {\xdef\latinencoding{%
2142     \ifx\UTFencname\@undefined
2143       EU\ifcase\bbl@engine\or2\or1\fi
2144     \else
2145       \UTFencname
2146     \fi}}%
2147   {\gdef\latinencoding{OT1}%
2148     \ifx\cf@encoding\bbl@t@one
2149       \xdef\latinencoding{\bbl@t@one}%
2150     \else
2151       \@ifl@aded{def}{t1enc}{\xdef\latinencoding{\bbl@t@one}}}%
2152   \fi}}

```

`\latintext` Then we can define the command `\latintext` which is a declarative switch to a latin font-encoding. Usage of this macro is deprecated.

```

2153 \DeclareRobustCommand{\latintext}{%
2154   \fontencoding{\latinencoding}\selectfont
2155   \def\encodingdefault{\latinencoding}}

```

`\textlatin` This command takes an argument which is then typeset using the requested font encoding. In order to avoid many encoding switches it operates in a local scope.

```
2156 \ifx\undefined\DeclareTextFontCommand
2157 \DeclareRobustCommand{\textlatin}[1]{\leavevmode{\latintext #1}}
2158 \else
2159 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textlatin}{\latintext}
2160 \fi
```

9.6 Basic bidi support

Work in progress. This code is currently placed here for practical reasons.

It is loosely based on `rlbabel.def`, but most of it has been developed from scratch. This `babel` module (by Johannes Braams and Boris Lavva) has served the purpose of typesetting R documents for two decades, and despite its flaws I think is still a good starting point (some parts have been copied here almost verbatim), partly thanks to its simplicity. I've also looked at `arabi` (by Youssef Jabri), which is compatible with `babel`.

There are two ways of modifying macros to make them “bidi”, namely, by patching the internal low level macros (which is what I have done with lists, columns, counters, tocs, much like `rlbabel` did), and by introducing a “middle layer” just below the user interface (sectioning, footnotes).

- `pdfTeX` provides a minimal support for bidi text, and it must be done by hand. Vertical typesetting is not possible.
- `xetex` is somewhat better, thanks to its font engine (even if not always reliable) and a few additional tools. However, very little is done at the paragraph level. Another challenging problem is text direction does not honour \TeX grouping.
- `luatex` can provide the most complete solution, as we can manipulate almost freely the node list, the generated lines, and so on, but bidi text does not work out of the box and some development is necessary. It also provides tools to properly set left-to-right and right-to-left page layouts. As `Lua \TeX -ja` shows, vertical typesetting is possible, too. Its main drawback is font handling is often considered to be less mature than `xetex`, mainly in Indic scripts (but there are steps to make `HarfBuzz`, the `xetex` font engine, available in `luatex`; see <<https://github.com/tatzetwerk/luatex-harfbuzz>>).

```
2161 \bbl@trace{Basic (internal) bidi support}
2162 \def\bbl@alscripts{,Arabic,Syriac,Thaana,}
2163 \def\bbl@rscripts{%
2164   ,Imperial Aramaic,Avestan,Cypriot,Hatran,Hebrew,%
2165   Old Hungarian,Old Hungarian,Lydian,Mandaean,Manichaeen,%
2166   Manichaeen,Meroitic Cursive,Meroitic,Old North Arabian,%
2167   Nabataean,N'Ko,Orkhon,Palmyrene,Inscriptional Pahlavi,%
2168   Psalter Pahlavi,Phoenician,Inscriptional Parthian,Samaritan,%
2169   Old South Arabian,}%
2170 \def\bbl@provide@dirs#1{%
2171   \bbl@xin@{\csname bbl@sname@#1\endcsname}{\bbl@alscripts\bbl@rscripts}%
2172   \ifin@
2173     \global\bbl@csarg\chardef{wdir@#1}\@ne
2174     \bbl@xin@{\csname bbl@sname@#1\endcsname}{\bbl@alscripts}%
2175     \ifin@
2176       \global\bbl@csarg\chardef{wdir@#1}\two  % useless in xetex
2177     \fi
2178   \else
2179     \global\bbl@csarg\chardef{wdir@#1}\z@
2180   \fi}
2181 \def\bbl@switchdir{%
```

```

2182 \bbl@ifunset{bbl@lsys@\language}\bbl@provide@lsys{\language}}{}%
2183 \bbl@ifunset{bbl@wdir@\language}\bbl@provide@dirs{\language}}{}%
2184 \bbl@exp{\bbl@setdirs\bbl@cs{wdir@\language}}
2185 \def\bbl@setdirs#1{% TODO - math
2186 \ifcase\bbl@select@type % TODO - strictly, not the right test
2187 \bbl@bodydir{#1}%
2188 \bbl@paddir{#1}%
2189 \fi
2190 \bbl@texkdir{#1}}
2191 \ifodd\bbl@engine % luatex=1
2192 \AddBabelHook{babel-bidi}{afterextras}{\bbl@switchdir}
2193 \DisableBabelHook{babel-bidi}
2194 \def\bbl@getluadir#1{%
2195 \directlua{
2196 if tex.#1dir == 'TLT' then
2197 tex.sprint('0')
2198 elseif tex.#1dir == 'TRT' then
2199 tex.sprint('1')
2200 end}}
2201 \def\bbl@setdir#1#2#3{% 1=text/par.. 2=\texkdir.. 3=0 lr/1 rl
2202 \ifcase#3\relax
2203 \ifcase\bbl@getluadir{#1}\relax\else
2204 #2 TLT\relax
2205 \fi
2206 \else
2207 \ifcase\bbl@getluadir{#1}\relax
2208 #2 TRT\relax
2209 \fi
2210 \fi}
2211 \def\bbl@texkdir#1{%
2212 \bbl@setdir{tex}\texkdir{#1}% TODO - ?\linedir
2213 \setattribute\bbl@attr@dir{#1}}
2214 \def\bbl@paddir{\bbl@setdir{par}\paddir}
2215 \def\bbl@bodydir{\bbl@setdir{body}\bodydir}
2216 \def\bbl@pagedir{\bbl@setdir{page}\pagedir}
2217 \def\bbl@dirparastext{\paddir\the\texkdir\relax}% %%%
2218 \else % pdftex=0, xetex=2
2219 \AddBabelHook{babel-bidi}{afterextras}{\bbl@switchdir}
2220 \DisableBabelHook{babel-bidi}
2221 \newcount\bbl@dirlevel
2222 \chardef\bbl@thetexkdir\z@
2223 \chardef\bbl@thepaddir\z@
2224 \def\bbl@texkdir#1{%
2225 \ifcase#1\relax
2226 \chardef\bbl@thetexkdir\z@
2227 \bbl@texkdir@i\beginL\endL
2228 \else
2229 \chardef\bbl@thetexkdir\@ne
2230 \bbl@texkdir@i\beginR\endR
2231 \fi}
2232 \def\bbl@texkdir@i#1#2{%
2233 \ifhmode
2234 \ifnum\currentgrouplevel>\z@
2235 \ifnum\currentgrouplevel=\bbl@dirlevel
2236 \bbl@error{Multiple bidi settings inside a group}%
2237 {I'll insert a new group, but expect wrong results.}%
2238 \bgroup\aftergroup#2\aftergroup\egroup
2239 \else
2240 \ifcase\currentgroup\or % 0 bottom

```

```

2241         \aftergroup#2% 1 simple {}
2242     \or
2243         \bgroup\aftergroup#2\aftergroup\egroup % 2 hbox
2244     \or
2245         \bgroup\aftergroup#2\aftergroup\egroup % 3 adj hbox
2246     \or\or\or % vbox vtop align
2247     \or
2248         \bgroup\aftergroup#2\aftergroup\egroup % 7 noalign
2249     \or\or\or\or\or\or\or % output math disc insert vcent mathchoice
2250     \or
2251         \aftergroup#2% 14 \begingroup
2252     \else
2253         \bgroup\aftergroup#2\aftergroup\egroup % 15 adj
2254     \fi
2255 \fi
2256 \bbl@dirlevel\currentgrouplevel
2257 \fi
2258 #1%
2259 \fi}
2260 \def\bbl@pardir#1{\chardef\bbl@thepardir#1\relax}
2261 \let\bbl@bodydir@gobble
2262 \let\bbl@pagedir@gobble
2263 \def\bbl@dirparastext{\chardef\bbl@thepardir\bbl@thetextdir}

```

The following command is executed only if there is a right-to-left script (once). It activates the `\everypar` hack for xetex, to properly handle the par direction. Note text and par dirs are decoupled to some extent (although not completely).

```

2264 \def\bbl@xebidipar{%
2265     \let\bbl@xebidipar\relax
2266     \TeXeTstate\@ne
2267     \def\bbl@xeverypar{%
2268         \ifcase\bbl@thepardir
2269             \ifcase\bbl@thetextdir\else\beginR\fi
2270         \else
2271             {\setbox\z@\lastbox\beginR\box\z@}%
2272         \fi}%
2273     \let\bbl@severypar\everypar
2274     \newtoks\everypar
2275     \everypar=\bbl@severypar
2276     \bbl@severypar{\bbl@xeverypar\the\everypar}}
2277 \fi

```

A tool for weak L (mainly digits).

```

2278 \DeclareRobustCommand\babelsublr[1]{\leavevmode{\bbl@textdir\z@#1}}

```

9.7 Local Language Configuration

`\loadlocalcfg` At some sites it may be necessary to add site-specific actions to a language definition file. This can be done by creating a file with the same name as the language definition file, but with the extension `.cfg`. For instance the file `nor sk.cfg` will be loaded when the language definition file `nor sk.ldf` is loaded. For plain-based formats we don't want to override the definition of `\loadlocalcfg` from `plain.def`.

```

2279 \bbl@trace{Local Language Configuration}
2280 \ifx\loadlocalcfg\undefined
2281     \@ifpackagewith{babel}{noconfigs}%
2282     {\let\loadlocalcfg@gobble}%

```

```

2283 {\def\loadlocalcfg#1{%
2284   \InputIfFileExists{#1.cfg}%
2285   {\typeout{*****^J%
2286             * Local config file #1.cfg used^^J%
2287             *}}%
2288   \@empty}}
2289 \fi

```

Just to be compatible with L^AT_EX 2.09 we add a few more lines of code:

```

2290 \ifx\@unexpandable@protect\@undefined
2291 \def\@unexpandable@protect{\noexpand\protect\noexpand}
2292 \long\def\protected@write#1#2#3{%
2293   \begingroup
2294     \let\thepage\relax
2295     #2%
2296     \let\protect\@unexpandable@protect
2297     \edef\reserved@a{\write#1{#3}}%
2298     \reserved@a
2299   \endgroup
2300   \if@nobreak\ifvmode\nobreak\fi\fi}
2301 \fi
2302 </core>

```

10 Multiple languages (switch.def)

Plain T_EX version 3.0 provides the primitive `\language` that is used to store the current language. When used with a pre-3.0 version this function has to be implemented by allocating a counter.

```

2303 <*kernel>
2304 <<Make sure ProvidesFile is defined>>
2305 \ProvidesFile{switch.def}[\<date>\<version>] Babel switching mechanism]
2306 <<Load macros for plain if not LaTeX>>
2307 <<Define core switching macros>>

```

`\adddialect` The macro `\adddialect` can be used to add the name of a dialect or variant language, for which an already defined hyphenation table can be used.

```

2308 \def\bbl@version{\<version>}
2309 \def\bbl@date{\<date>}
2310 \bbl@trace{Some switching tools}
2311 \def\adddialect#1#2{%
2312   \global\chardef#1#2\relax
2313   \bbl@usehooks{adddialect}{\#1}{\#2}}%
2314   \wlog{\string#1 = a dialect from \string\language#2}}

```

`\bbl@iflanguage` executes code only if the language `l@` exists. Otherwise raises an error. The argument of `\bbl@fixname` has to be a macro name, as it may get “fixed” if casing (lc/uc) is wrong. It’s intended to fix a long-standing bug when `\foreignlanguage` and the like appear in a `\MakeXXXcase`. However, a lowercase form is not imposed to improve backward compatibility (perhaps you defined a language named MYLANG, but unfortunately mixed case names cannot be trapped). Note `l@` is encapsulated, so that its case does not change.

```

2315 \def\bbl@fixname#1{%
2316   \begingroup
2317     \def\bbl@tempe{l@}%
2318     \edef\bbl@tempd{\noexpand\@ifundefined{\noexpand\bbl@tempe#1}}%
2319     \bbl@tempd

```

```

2320      {\lowercase\expandafter{\bbl@tempd}%
2321      {\uppercase\expandafter{\bbl@tempd}%
2322      \@empty
2323      {\edef\bbl@tempd{\def\noexpand#1{#1}}%
2324      \uppercase\expandafter{\bbl@tempd}}}%
2325      {\edef\bbl@tempd{\def\noexpand#1{#1}}%
2326      \lowercase\expandafter{\bbl@tempd}}}%
2327      \@empty
2328      \edef\bbl@tempd{\endgroup\def\noexpand#1{#1}}%
2329      \bbl@tempd}
2330 \def\bbl@iflanguage#1{%
2331   \@ifundefined{l@#1}{\@nolanerr{#1}\@gobble}\@firstofone}

```

`\iflanguage` Users might want to test (in a private package for instance) which language is currently active. For this we provide a test macro, `\iflanguage`, that has three arguments. It checks whether the first argument is a known language. If so, it compares the first argument with the value of `\language`. Then, depending on the result of the comparison, it executes either the second or the third argument.

```

2332 \def\iflanguage#1{%
2333   \bbl@iflanguage{#1}{%
2334     \ifnum\cscname l@#1\endcsname=\language
2335       \expandafter\@firstoftwo
2336     \else
2337       \expandafter\@secondoftwo
2338     \fi}}

```

10.1 Selecting the language

`\selectlanguage` The macro `\selectlanguage` checks whether the language is already defined before it performs its actual task, which is to update `\language` and activate language-specific definitions.

To allow the call of `\selectlanguage` either with a control sequence name or with a simple string as argument, we have to use a trick to delete the optional escape character. To convert a control sequence to a string, we use the `\string` primitive. Next we have to look at the first character of this string and compare it with the escape character. Because this escape character can be changed by setting the internal integer `\escapechar` to a character number, we have to compare this number with the character of the string. To do this we have to use T_EX's backquote notation to specify the character as a number. If the first character of the `\string`'ed argument is the current escape character, the comparison has stripped this character and the rest in the 'then' part consists of the rest of the control sequence name. Otherwise we know that either the argument is not a control sequence or `\escapechar` is set to a value outside of the character range 0–255. If the user gives an empty argument, we provide a default argument for `\string`. This argument should expand to nothing.

```

2339 \bbl@trace{Language selectors}
2340 \let\bbl@select@type\z@
2341 \edef\selectlanguage{%
2342   \noexpand\protect
2343   \expandafter\noexpand\cscname selectlanguage \endcsname}

```

Because the command `\selectlanguage` could be used in a moving argument it expands to `\protect\selectlanguageL`. Therefore, we have to make sure that a macro `\protect` exists. If it doesn't it is `\let` to `\relax`.

```

2344 \ifx\@undefined\protect\let\protect\relax\fi

```

As \LaTeX 2.09 writes to files *expanded* whereas \LaTeX 2 ϵ takes care *not* to expand the arguments of `\write` statements we need to be a bit clever about the way we add information to .aux files. Therefore we introduce the macro `\xstring` which should expand to the right amount of `\string`'s.

```
2345 \ifx\documentclass\undefined
2346   \def\xstring{\string\string\string}
2347 \else
2348   \let\xstring\string
2349 \fi
```

Since version 3.5 babel writes entries to the auxiliary files in order to typeset table of contents etc. in the correct language environment.

`\bbl@pop@language` But when the language change happens *inside* a group the end of the group doesn't write anything to the auxiliary files. Therefore we need \TeX 's `aftergroup` mechanism to help us. The command `\aftergroup` stores the token immediately following it to be executed when the current group is closed. So we define a temporary control sequence `\bbl@pop@language` to be executed at the end of the group. It calls `\bbl@set@language` with the name of the current language as its argument.

`\bbl@language@stack` The previous solution works for one level of nesting groups, but as soon as more levels are used it is no longer adequate. For that case we need to keep track of the nested languages using a stack mechanism. This stack is called `\bbl@language@stack` and initially empty.

```
2350 \def\bbl@language@stack{}
```

When using a stack we need a mechanism to push an element on the stack and to retrieve the information afterwards.

`\bbl@push@language` The stack is simply a list of languagenames, separated with a '+' sign; the push function can be simple:

`\bbl@pop@language`

```
2351 \def\bbl@push@language{%
2352   \xdef\bbl@language@stack{\language+\bbl@language@stack}}
```

Retrieving information from the stack is a little bit less simple, as we need to remove the element from the stack while storing it in the macro `\language`. For this we first define a helper function.

`\bbl@pop@lang` This macro stores its first element (which is delimited by the '+'-sign) in `\language` and stores the rest of the string (delimited by '-') in its third argument.

```
2353 \def\bbl@pop@lang#1+#2-#3{%
2354   \edef\language{#1}\xdef#3{#2}}
```

The reason for the somewhat weird arrangement of arguments to the helper function is the fact it is called in the following way. This means that before `\bbl@pop@lang` is executed \TeX first *expands* the stack, stored in `\bbl@language@stack`. The result of that is that the argument string of `\bbl@pop@lang` contains one or more language names, each followed by a '+'-sign (zero language names won't occur as this macro will only be called after something has been pushed on the stack) followed by the '-'-sign and finally the reference to the stack.

```
2355 \let\bbl@ifrestoring\@secondoftwo
2356 \def\bbl@pop@language{%
2357   \expandafter\bbl@pop@lang\bbl@language@stack-\bbl@language@stack
2358   \let\bbl@ifrestoring\@firstoftwo
2359   \expandafter\bbl@set@language\expandafter{\language}%
2360   \let\bbl@ifrestoring\@secondoftwo}
```

Once the name of the previous language is retrieved from the stack, it is fed to `\bbl@set@language` to do the actual work of switching everything that needs switching.


```

2361 \expandafter\def\csname selectlanguage \endcsname#1{%
2362   \ifnum\bbl@hymapsel=\@ccclv\let\bbl@hymapsel\tw@ \fi
2363   \bbl@push@language
2364   \aftergroup\bbl@pop@language
2365   \bbl@set@language{#1}}

```

`\bbl@set@language` The macro `\bbl@set@language` takes care of switching the language environment *and* of writing entries on the auxiliary files. For historical reasons, language names can be either language of `\language`. To catch either form a trick is used, but unfortunately as a side effect the catcodes of letters in `\language` are not well defined. The list of auxiliary files can be extended by redefining `\BabelContentsFiles`, but make sure they are loaded inside a group (as `aux`, `toc`, `lof`, and `lot` do) or the last language of the document will remain active afterwards.

We also write a command to change the current language in the auxiliary files.

```

2366 \def\BabelContentsFiles{toc,lof,lot}
2367 \def\bbl@set@language#1{%
2368   \edef\language{%
2369     \ifnum\escapechar=\expandafter`\string#1\@empty
2370     \else\string#1\@empty\fi}%
2371   \select@language{\language}%
2372   \expandafter\ifx\csname date\language\endcsname\relax\else
2373     \if@filesw
2374       \protected@write\@auxout{{}\string\babel@aux{\language}}{}}%
2375       \bbl@usehooks{write}{}}%
2376   \fi
2377 \fi}
2378 \def\select@language#1{%
2379   \ifnum\bbl@hymapsel=\@ccclv\chardef\bbl@hymapsel4\relax\fi
2380   \edef\language{#1}%
2381   \bbl@fixname\language
2382   \bbl@iflanguage\language{%
2383     \expandafter\ifx\csname date\language\endcsname\relax
2384       \bbl@error
2385       {Unknown language `#1'. Either you have\\%
2386        misspelled its name, it has not been installed,\\%
2387        or you requested it in a previous run. Fix its name,\\%
2388        install it or just rerun the file, respectively}%
2389       {You may proceed, but expect wrong results}%
2390     \else
2391       \let\bbl@select@type\z@
2392       \expandafter\bbl@switch\expandafter{\language}%
2393     \fi}}
2394 \def\babel@aux#1#2{%
2395   \select@language{#1}%
2396   \bbl@foreach\BabelContentsFiles{%
2397     \@writefile{##1}{\babel@toc{#1}{#2}}}% % TODO - ok in plain?
2398 \def\babel@toc#1#2{%
2399   \select@language{#1}}

```

A bit of optimization. Select in heads/foots the language only if necessary. The real thing is in `babel.def`.

```

2400 \let\select@language@x\select@language

```

First, check if the user asks for a known language. If so, update the value of `\language` and call `\originalTeX` to bring \TeX in a certain pre-defined state.

The name of the language is stored in the control sequence `\language`.

Then we have to *redefine* `\originalTeX` to compensate for the things that have been activated. To save memory space for the macro definition of `\originalTeX`, we construct

the control sequence name for the `\noextras<lang>` command at definition time by expanding the `\csname` primitive.

Now activate the language-specific definitions. This is done by constructing the names of three macros by concatenating three words with the argument of `\selectlanguage`, and calling these macros.

The switching of the values of `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin` is somewhat different. First we save their current values, then we check if `\<lang>hyphenmins` is defined. If it is not, we set default values (2 and 3), otherwise the values in `\<lang>hyphenmins` will be used.

```

2401 \newif\ifbbl@usedategroup
2402 \def\bbl@switch#1{%
2403   \originalTeX
2404   \expandafter\def\expandafter\originalTeX\expandafter{%
2405     \csname noextras#1\endcsname
2406     \let\originalTeX\empty
2407     \babel@beginsave}%
2408   \bbl@usehooks{afterreset}}}%
2409   \languageshorthands{none}%
2410   \ifcase\bbl@select@type
2411     \ifhmode
2412       \hskip\z@skip % trick to ignore spaces
2413       \csname captions#1\endcsname\relax
2414       \csname date#1\endcsname\relax
2415       \loop\ifdim\lastskip>\z@\unskip\repeat\unskip
2416     \else
2417       \csname captions#1\endcsname\relax
2418       \csname date#1\endcsname\relax
2419     \fi
2420   \else\ifbbl@usedategroup
2421     \bbl@usedategroupfalse
2422     \ifhmode
2423       \hskip\z@skip % trick to ignore spaces
2424       \csname date#1\endcsname\relax
2425       \loop\ifdim\lastskip>\z@\unskip\repeat\unskip
2426     \else
2427       \csname date#1\endcsname\relax
2428     \fi
2429   \fi\fi
2430   \bbl@usehooks{beforeextras}}}%
2431   \csname extras#1\endcsname\relax
2432   \bbl@usehooks{afterextras}}}%
2433   \ifcase\bbl@opt@hyphenmap\or
2434     \def\BabelLower##1##2{\lccode##1=##2\relax}%
2435     \ifnum\bbl@hymapsel>4\else
2436       \csname\language @bbl@hyphenmap\endcsname
2437     \fi
2438     \chardef\bbl@opt@hyphenmap\z@
2439   \else
2440     \ifnum\bbl@hymapsel>\bbl@opt@hyphenmap\else
2441       \csname\language @bbl@hyphenmap\endcsname
2442     \fi
2443   \fi
2444   \global\let\bbl@hymapsel@cclv
2445   \bbl@patterns{#1}%
2446   \babel@savevariable\lefthyphenmin
2447   \babel@savevariable\righthyphenmin
2448   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname\relax
2449     \set@hyphenmins\tw@\thr@@\relax

```

```

2450 \else
2451 \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\set@hyphenmins
2452 \csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname\relax
2453 \fi}

```

`otherlanguage` The `otherlanguage` environment can be used as an alternative to using the `\selectlanguage` declarative command. When you are typesetting a document which mixes left-to-right and right-to-left typesetting you have to use this environment in order to let things work as you expect them to. The `\ignorespaces` command is necessary to hide the environment when it is entered in horizontal mode.

```

2454 \long\def\otherlanguage#1{%
2455 \ifnum\bb1@hymapsel=\cclv\let\bb1@hymapsel\thr@@\fi
2456 \csname selectlanguage\endcsname{#1}%
2457 \ignorespaces}

```

The `\endotherlanguage` part of the environment tries to hide itself when it is called in horizontal mode.

```

2458 \long\def\endotherlanguage{%
2459 \global\@ignoretrue\ignorespaces}

```

`otherlanguage*` The `otherlanguage` environment is meant to be used when a large part of text from a different language needs to be typeset, but without changing the translation of words such as ‘figure’. This environment makes use of `\foreign@language`.

```

2460 \expandafter\def\csname otherlanguage*\endcsname#1{%
2461 \ifnum\bb1@hymapsel=\cclv\chardef\bb1@hymapsel4\relax\fi
2462 \foreign@language{#1}}

```

At the end of the environment we need to switch off the extra definitions. The grouping mechanism of the environment will take care of resetting the correct hyphenation rules and “extras”.

```

2463 \expandafter\let\csname endotherlanguage*\endcsname\relax

```

`\foreignlanguage` The `\foreignlanguage` command is another substitute for the `\selectlanguage` command. This command takes two arguments, the first argument is the name of the language to use for typesetting the text specified in the second argument. Unlike `\selectlanguage` this command doesn’t switch *everything*, it only switches the hyphenation rules and the extra definitions for the language specified. It does this within a group and assumes the `\extras⟨lang⟩` command doesn’t make any `\global` changes. The coding is very similar to part of `\selectlanguage`. `\bb1@beforeforeign` is a trick to fix a bug in bidi texts. `\foreignlanguage` is supposed to be a ‘text’ command, and therefore it must emit a `\leavevmode`, but it does not, and therefore the indent is placed on the opposite margin. For backward compatibility, however, it is done only if a right-to-left script is requested; otherwise, it is no-op. (3.11) `\foreignlanguage*` is a temporary, experimental macro for a few lines with a different script direction, while preserving the paragraph format (thank the braces around `\par`, things like `\hangindent` are not reset). Do not use it in production, because its semantics and its syntax may change (and very likely will, or even it could be removed altogether). Currently it enters in `vmode` and then selects the language (which in turn sets the paragraph direction). (3.11) Also experimental are the hook `foreign` and `foreign*`. With them you can redefine `\BabelText` which by default does nothing. Its behaviour is not well defined yet. So, use it in horizontal mode only if you do not want surprises. In other words, at the beginning of a paragraph `\foreignlanguage` enters into `hmode` with the surrounding `lang`, and with `\foreignlanguage*` with the new `lang`.

```

2464 \providecommand\bbl@beforeforeign{}
2465 \edef\foreignlanguage{%
2466   \noexpand\protect
2467   \expandafter\noexpand\csname foreignlanguage \endcsname}
2468 \expandafter\def\csname foreignlanguage \endcsname{%
2469   \@ifstar\bbl@foreign@s\bbl@foreign@x}
2470 \def\bbl@foreign@x#1#2{%
2471   \begingroup
2472     \let\BabelText\@firstofone
2473     \bbl@beforeforeign
2474     \foreign@language{#1}%
2475     \bbl@usehooks{foreign}{}%
2476     \BabelText{#2}% Now in horizontal mode!
2477   \endgroup}
2478 \def\bbl@foreign@s#1#2{% TODO - \shapemode, \setpar, ?\@@par
2479   \begingroup
2480     {\par}%
2481     \let\BabelText\@firstofone
2482     \foreign@language{#1}%
2483     \bbl@usehooks{foreign*}{}%
2484     \bbl@dirparastext
2485     \BabelText{#2}% Still in vertical mode!
2486     {\par}%
2487   \endgroup}

```

`\foreign@language` This macro does the work for `\foreignlanguage` and the `otherlanguage*` environment. First we need to store the name of the language and check that it is a known language. Then it just calls `bbl@switch`.

```

2488 \def\foreign@language#1{%
2489   \edef\language#1%
2490   \bbl@fixname\language
2491   \bbl@iflanguage\language%
2492     \expandafter\ifx\csname date\language\endcsname\relax
2493     \bbl@warning
2494       {Unknown language `#1'. Either you have\\%
2495        misspelled its name, it has not been installed,\\%
2496        or you requested it in a previous run. Fix its name,\\%
2497        install it or just rerun the file, respectively.\\%
2498        I'll proceed, but expect wrong results.\\%
2499        Reported}%
2500   \fi
2501   \let\bbl@select@type\@ne
2502   \expandafter\bbl@switch\expandafter{\language}}

```

`\bbl@patterns` This macro selects the hyphenation patterns by changing the `\language` register. If special hyphenation patterns are available specifically for the current font encoding, use them instead of the default.

It also sets hyphenation exceptions, but only once, because they are global (here language `\lcode's` has been set, too). `\bbl@hyphenation@` is set to relax until the very first `\babelhyphenation`, so do nothing with this value. If the exceptions for a language (by its number, not its name, so that `:ENC` is taken into account) has been set, then use `\hyphenation` with both global and language exceptions and empty the latter to mark they must not be set again.

```

2503 \bbl@trace{Switching patterns}
2504 \let\bbl@hyphlist\@empty
2505 \let\bbl@hyphenation@\relax
2506 \let\bbl@pttnlist\@empty

```

```

2507 \let\bbl@patterns@\relax
2508 \let\bbl@hymapsel=\@cc1v
2509 \def\bbl@patterns#1{%
2510   \language=\expandafter\ifx\csname l@#1:\f@encoding\endcsname\relax
2511     \csname l@#1\endcsname
2512     \edef\bbl@tempa{#1}%
2513   \else
2514     \csname l@#1:\f@encoding\endcsname
2515     \edef\bbl@tempa{#1:\f@encoding}%
2516   \fi
2517   \@expandtwoargs\bbl@usehooks{patterns}{#1}{\bbl@tempa}}%
2518   \@ifundefined{bbl@hyphenation@}{#1}{% Can be \relax!
2519     \begingroup
2520       \bbl@xin@{, \number\language,}{, \bbl@hyphlist}%
2521       \ifin@else
2522         \@expandtwoargs\bbl@usehooks{hyphenation}{#1}{\bbl@tempa}}%
2523         \hyphenation{%
2524           \bbl@hyphenation@
2525           \@ifundefined{bbl@hyphenation@#1}%
2526             \empty
2527             {\space\csname bbl@hyphenation@#1\endcsname}}%
2528         \xdef\bbl@hyphlist{\bbl@hyphlist\number\language,}%
2529       \fi
2530     \endgroup}}

```

hyphenrules The environment `hyphenrules` can be used to select *just* the hyphenation rules. This environment does *not* change `\language` and when the hyphenation rules specified were not loaded it has no effect. Note however, `\lccode`'s and font encodings are not set at all, so in most cases you should use other language*.

```

2531 \def\hyphenrules#1{%
2532   \edef\bbl@tempf{#1}%
2533   \bbl@fixname\bbl@tempf
2534   \bbl@iflanguage\bbl@tempf{%
2535     \expandafter\bbl@patterns\expandafter{\bbl@tempf}%
2536     \languageshortands{none}%
2537     \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@tempf hyphenmins}%
2538       {\set@hyphenmins\tw@\thr@\relax}%
2539       {\bbl@exp{\set@hyphenmins\@nameuse{\bbl@tempf hyphenmins}}}}
2540 \let\endhyphenrules\empty

```

\providehyphenmins The macro `\providehyphenmins` should be used in the language definition files to provide a *default* setting for the hyphenation parameters `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin`. If the macro `\langhyphenmins` is already defined this command has no effect.

```

2541 \def\providehyphenmins#1#2{%
2542   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname\relax
2543     \@namedef{#1hyphenmins}{#2}%
2544   \fi}

```

\set@hyphenmins This macro sets the values of `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin`. It expects two values as its argument.

```

2545 \def\set@hyphenmins#1#2{%
2546   \lefthyphenmin#1\relax
2547   \righthyphenmin#2\relax}

```

\ProvidesLanguage The identification code for each file is something that was introduced in $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\epsilon}$. When the command `\ProvidesFile` does not exist, a dummy definition is provided temporarily. For use in the language definition file the command `\ProvidesLanguage` is defined by `babel`.

Depending on the format, ie, on if the former is defined, we use a similar definition or not.

```

2548 \ifx\ProvidesFile\undefined
2549 \def\ProvidesLanguage#1[#2 #3 #4]{%
2550   \wlog{Language: #1 #4 #3 <#2>}%
2551 }
2552 \else
2553 \def\ProvidesLanguage#1{%
2554   \begingroup
2555     \catcode`\ 10 %
2556     \@makeother\/%
2557     \ifnextchar[%]
2558       {\@provideslanguage{#1}}{\@provideslanguage{#1}[]}}
2559 \def\@provideslanguage#1[#2]{%
2560   \wlog{Language: #1 #2}%
2561   \expandafter\xdef\csname ver@#1.ldf\endcsname{#2}%
2562   \endgroup}
2563 \fi

```

\LdfInit This macro is defined in two versions. The first version is to be part of the ‘kernel’ of babel, ie. the part that is loaded in the format; the second version is defined in babel.def. The version in the format just checks the category code of the ampersand and then loads babel.def.

The category code of the ampersand is restored and the macro calls itself again with the new definition from babel.def

```

2564 \def\LdfInit{%
2565   \chardef\atcatcode=\catcode`\@
2566   \catcode`\@=11\relax
2567   \input babel.def\relax
2568   \catcode`\@=\atcatcode \let\atcatcode\relax
2569   \LdfInit}

```

\originalTeX The macro `\originalTeX` should be known to \TeX at this moment. As it has to be expandable we `\let` it to `\@empty` instead of `\relax`.

```

2570 \ifx\originalTeX\undefined\let\originalTeX\@empty\fi

```

Because this part of the code can be included in a format, we make sure that the macro which initialises the save mechanism, `\babel@beginsave`, is not considered to be undefined.

```

2571 \ifx\babel@beginsave\undefined\let\babel@beginsave\relax\fi

```

A few macro names are reserved for future releases of babel, which will use the concept of ‘locale’:

```

2572 \providecommand\setlocale{%
2573   \bbl@error
2574   {Not yet available}%
2575   {Find an armchair, sit down and wait}}
2576 \let\uselocale\setlocale
2577 \let\locale\setlocale
2578 \let\selectlocale\setlocale
2579 \let\textlocale\setlocale
2580 \let\textlanguage\setlocale
2581 \let\languagetext\setlocale

```

10.2 Errors

\@nolanerr The babel package will signal an error when a documents tries to select a language that hasn’t been defined earlier. When a user selects a language for which no hyphenation

\@nopatterns

patterns were loaded into the format he will be given a warning about that fact. We revert to the patterns for `\language=0` in that case. In most formats that will be (US)english, but it might also be empty.

`\@noopterr` When the package was loaded without options not everything will work as expected. An error message is issued in that case.
When the format knows about `\PackageError` it must be $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$, so we can safely use its error handling interface. Otherwise we'll have to 'keep it simple'.

```

2582 \bbl@trace{Errors, warnings}
2583 \edef\bbl@nulllanguage{\string\language=0}
2584 \ifx\PackageError\undefined
2585   \def\bbl@error#1#2{%
2586     \begingroup
2587       \newlinechar=`^^J
2588       \def\{^^J(babel) }%
2589       \errhelp{#2}\errmessage{\{#1}%
2590     \endgroup}
2591   \def\bbl@warning#1{%
2592     \begingroup
2593       \newlinechar=`^^J
2594       \def\{^^J(babel) }%
2595       \message{\{#1}%
2596     \endgroup}
2597   \def\bbl@info#1{%
2598     \begingroup
2599       \newlinechar=`^^J
2600       \def\{^^J}%
2601       \wlog{#1}%
2602     \endgroup}
2603 \else
2604   \def\bbl@error#1#2{%
2605     \begingroup
2606       \def\{\MessageBreak}%
2607       \PackageError{babel}{#1}{#2}%
2608     \endgroup}
2609   \def\bbl@warning#1{%
2610     \begingroup
2611       \def\{\MessageBreak}%
2612       \PackageWarning{babel}{#1}%
2613     \endgroup}
2614   \def\bbl@info#1{%
2615     \begingroup
2616       \def\{\MessageBreak}%
2617       \PackageInfo{babel}{#1}%
2618     \endgroup}
2619 \fi
2620 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{silent}
2621   {\let\bbl@info@gobble
2622    \let\bbl@warning@gobble}
2623   {}
2624 \def\bbl@nocaption#1#2{% 1: text to be printed 2: caption macro \langXname
2625   \gdef#2{\textbf{?#1?}}%
2626   #2%
2627   \bbl@warning{%
2628     \string#2 not set. Please, define\%
2629     it in the preamble with something like:\%
2630     \string\renewcommand\string#2{..\}%
2631     Reported}}

```

```

2632 \def\@nolanerr#1{%
2633   \bbl@error
2634   {You haven't defined the language #1\space yet}%
2635   {Your command will be ignored, type <return> to proceed}}
2636 \def\@nopatterns#1{%
2637   \bbl@warning
2638   {No hyphenation patterns were preloaded for\\%
2639    the language `#1' into the format.\\%
2640    Please, configure your TeX system to add them and\\%
2641    rebuild the format. Now I will use the patterns\\%
2642    preloaded for \bbl@nulllanguage\space instead}}
2643 \let\bbl@usehooks\@gobbletwo
2644 </kernel>

```

11 Loading hyphenation patterns

The following code is meant to be read by \LaTeX because it should instruct \TeX to read hyphenation patterns. To this end the `docstrip` option `patterns` can be used to include this code in the file `hyphen.cfg`. Code is written with lower level macros.

`toks8` stores info to be shown when the program is run.

We want to add a message to the message \LaTeX 2.09 puts in the `\everyjob` register. This could be done by the following code:

```

\let\orgeveryjob\everyjob
\def\everyjob#1{%
  \orgeveryjob{#1}%
  \orgeveryjob\expandafter{\the\orgeveryjob\immediate\write16{%
    hyphenation patterns for \the\loaded@patterns loaded.}}%
  \let\everyjob\orgeveryjob\let\orgeveryjob\@undefined}

```

The code above redefines the control sequence `\everyjob` in order to be able to add something to the current contents of the register. This is necessary because the processing of hyphenation patterns happens long before \LaTeX fills the register.

There are some problems with this approach though.

- When someone wants to use several hyphenation patterns with \LaTeX the above scheme won't work. The reason is that \LaTeX overwrites the contents of the `\everyjob` register with its own message.
- Plain \TeX does not use the `\everyjob` register so the message would not be displayed.

To circumvent this a 'dirty trick' can be used. As this code is only processed when creating a new format file there is one command that is sure to be used, `\dump`. Therefore the original `\dump` is saved in `\org@dump` and a new definition is supplied.

To make sure that \LaTeX 2.09 executes the `\@begindocumenthook` we would want to alter `\begin{document}`, but as this done too often already, we add the new code at the front of `\@preamblecmds`. But we can only do that after it has been defined, so we add this piece of code to `\dump`.

This new definition starts by adding an instruction to write a message on the terminal and in the transcript file to inform the user of the preloaded hyphenation patterns.

Then everything is restored to the old situation and the format is dumped.

```

2645 (*patterns)
2646 <<Make sure ProvidesFile is defined>>
2647 \ProvidesFile{hyphen.cfg}[<<date>> <<version>> Babel hyphens]
2648 \xdef\bbl@format{\jobname}

```



```

2649 \ifx\AtBeginDocument\@undefined
2650   \def\@empty{}
2651   \let\orig@dump\dump
2652   \def\dump{%
2653     \ifx\@ztryfc\@undefined
2654     \else
2655       \toks0=\expandafter{\@preamblecmds}%
2656       \edef\@preamblecmds{\noexpand\@begindocumenthook\the\toks0}%
2657       \def\@begindocumenthook{}%
2658     \fi
2659     \let\dump\orig@dump\let\orig@dump\@undefined\dump}
2660 \fi
2661 <<Define core switching macros>>
2662 \toks8{Babel <<@version>> and hyphenation patterns for }%

```

`\process@line` Each line in the file `language.dat` is processed by `\process@line` after it is read. The first thing this macro does is to check whether the line starts with `=`. When the first token of a line is an `=`, the macro `\process@synonym` is called; otherwise the macro `\process@language` will continue.

```

2663 \def\process@line#1#2 #3 #4 {%
2664   \ifx=#1%
2665     \process@synonym{#2}%
2666   \else
2667     \process@language{#1#2}{#3}{#4}%
2668   \fi
2669   \ignorespaces}

```

`\process@synonym` This macro takes care of the lines which start with an `=`. It needs an empty token register to begin with. `\bbl@languages` is also set to empty.

```

2670 \toks@{}
2671 \def\bbl@languages{}

```

When no languages have been loaded yet, the name following the `=` will be a synonym for hyphenation register 0. So, it is stored in a token register and executed when the first pattern file has been processed. (The `\relax` just helps to the `\if` below catching synonyms without a language.)
Otherwise the name will be a synonym for the language loaded last.
We also need to copy the `hyphenmin` parameters for the synonym.

```

2672 \def\process@synonym#1{%
2673   \ifnum\last@language=\m@ne
2674     \toks@\expandafter{\the\toks@\relax\process@synonym{#1}}%
2675   \else
2676     \expandafter\chardef\csname l@#1\endcsname\last@language
2677     \wlog{\string\l@#1=\string\language\the\last@language}%
2678     \expandafter\let\csname #1hyphenmins\expandafter\endcsname
2679       \csname\language\hyphenmins\endcsname
2680     \let\bbl@elt\relax
2681     \edef\bbl@languages{\bbl@languages\bbl@elt{#1}{\the\last@language}}}%
2682   \fi}

```

`\process@language` The macro `\process@language` is used to process a non-empty line from the ‘configuration file’. It has three arguments, each delimited by white space. The first argument is the ‘name’ of a language; the second is the name of the file that contains the patterns. The optional third argument is the name of a file containing hyphenation exceptions. The first thing to do is call `\addlanguage` to allocate a pattern register and to make that register ‘active’. Then the ‘name’ of the language that will be loaded now is added to the token register `\toks8`. and finally the pattern file is read.

For some hyphenation patterns it is needed to load them with a specific font encoding selected. This can be specified in the file `language.dat` by adding for instance ‘:T1’ to the name of the language. The macro `\bbl@get@enc` extracts the font encoding from the language name and stores it in `\bbl@hyph@enc`. The latter can be used in hyphenation files if you need to set a behaviour depending on the given encoding (it is set to empty if no encoding is given).

Pattern files may contain assignments to `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin`. T_EX does not keep track of these assignments. Therefore we try to detect such assignments and store them in the `\<lang>hyphenmins` macro. When no assignments were made we provide a default setting.

Some pattern files contain changes to the `\lccode` en `\uccode` arrays. Such changes should remain local to the language; therefore we process the pattern file in a group; the `\patterns` command acts globally so its effect will be remembered.

Then we globally store the settings of `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin` and close the group.

When the hyphenation patterns have been processed we need to see if a file with hyphenation exceptions needs to be read. This is the case when the third argument is not empty and when it does not contain a space token. (Note however there is no need to save hyphenation exceptions into the format.)

`\bbl@languages` saves a snapshot of the loaded languages in the form `\bbl@elt{<language-name>}{<number>}{<patterns-file>}{<exceptions-file>}`. Note the last 2 arguments are empty in ‘dialects’ defined in `language.dat` with `=`. Note also the language name can have encoding info.

Finally, if the counter `\language` is equal to zero we execute the synonyms stored.

```

2683 \def\process@language#1#2#3{%
2684   \expandafter\addlanguage\csname l@#1\endcsname
2685   \expandafter\language\csname l@#1\endcsname
2686   \edef\language#1#2#3{%
2687     \bbl@hook@everylanguage{#1}%
2688     \bbl@get@enc#1::\@@@
2689     \begingroup
2690       \lefthyphenmin\m@ne
2691       \bbl@hook@loadpatterns{#2}%
2692       \ifnum\lefthyphenmin=\m@ne
2693       \else
2694         \expandafter\xdef\csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname{%
2695           \the\lefthyphenmin\the\righthyphenmin}%
2696       \fi
2697     \endgroup
2698   \def\bbl@tempa{#3}%
2699   \ifx\bbl@tempa\@empty\else
2700     \bbl@hook@loadexceptions{#3}%
2701   \fi
2702   \let\bbl@elt\relax
2703   \edef\bbl@languages{%
2704     \bbl@languages\bbl@elt{#1}{\the\language}{#2}{\bbl@tempa}}%
2705   \ifnum\the\language=\z@
2706     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname\relax
2707       \set@hyphenmins\tw@\thr@@\relax
2708     \else
2709       \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\set@hyphenmins
2710       \csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname
2711     \fi
2712     \the\toks@
2713     \toks@{}%
2714   \fi}

```

`\bbl@get@enc` The macro `\bbl@get@enc` extracts the font encoding from the language name and stores it in `\bbl@hyph@enc`. It uses delimited arguments to achieve this.

```
2715 \def\bbl@get@enc#1:#2:#3@@@{\def\bbl@hyph@enc{#2}}
```

Now, hooks are defined. For efficiency reasons, they are dealt here in a special way. Besides `luatex`, format specific configuration files are taken into account.

```
2716 \def\bbl@hook@everylanguage#1{}
2717 \def\bbl@hook@loadpatterns#1{\input #1\relax}
2718 \let\bbl@hook@loadexceptions\bbl@hook@loadpatterns
2719 \let\bbl@hook@loadkernel\bbl@hook@loadpatterns
2720 \begingroup
2721   \def\AddBabelHook#1#2{%
2722     \expandafter\ifx\csname bbl@hook@#2\endcsname\relax
2723       \def\next{\toks1}%
2724     \else
2725       \def\next{\expandafter\gdef\csname bbl@hook@#2\endcsname###1}%
2726     \fi
2727     \next}
2728 \ifx\directlua\undefined
2729   \ifx\XeTeXinputencoding\undefined\else
2730     \input xebabel.def
2731   \fi
2732 \else
2733   \input luababel.def
2734 \fi
2735 \openin1 = babel-\bbl@format.cfg
2736 \ifeof1
2737 \else
2738   \input babel-\bbl@format.cfg\relax
2739 \fi
2740 \closein1
2741 \endgroup
2742 \bbl@hook@loadkernel{switch.def}
```

`\readconfigfile` The configuration file can now be opened for reading.

```
2743 \openin1 = language.dat
```

See if the file exists, if not, use the default hyphenation file `hyphen.tex`. The user will be informed about this.

```
2744 \def\language{english}%
2745 \ifeof1
2746   \message{I couldn't find the file language.dat,\space
2747     I will try the file hyphen.tex}
2748   \input hyphen.tex\relax
2749   \chardef\l@english\z@
2750 \else
```

Pattern registers are allocated using count register `\last@language`. Its initial value is 0. The definition of the macro `\newlanguage` is such that it first increments the count register and then defines the language. In order to have the first patterns loaded in pattern register number 0 we initialize `\last@language` with the value -1 .

```
2751 \last@language\m@ne
```

We now read lines from the file until the end is found

```
2752 \loop
```

While reading from the input, it is useful to switch off recognition of the end-of-line character. This saves us stripping off spaces from the contents of the control sequence.

```
2753 \endlinechar\m@ne
2754 \read1 to \bbl@line
2755 \endlinechar`\^^M
```

If the file has reached its end, exit from the loop here. If not, empty lines are skipped. Add 3 space characters to the end of \bbl@line. This is needed to be able to recognize the arguments of \process@line later on. The default language should be the very first one.

```
2756 \if T\ifeof1F\fi T\relax
2757 \ifx\bbl@line\empty\else
2758 \edef\bbl@line{\bbl@line\space\space\space}%
2759 \expandafter\process@line\bbl@line\relax
2760 \fi
2761 \repeat
```

Check for the end of the file. We must reverse the test for \ifeof without \else. Then reactivate the default patterns.

```
2762 \begingroup
2763 \def\bbl@elt#1#2#3#4{%
2764 \global\language=#2\relax
2765 \gdef\language#1}%
2766 \def\bbl@elt##1##2##3##4{}}%
2767 \bbl@languages
2768 \endgroup
2769 \fi
```

and close the configuration file.

```
2770 \closein1
```

We add a message about the fact that babel is loaded in the format and with which language patterns to the \everyjob register.

```
2771 \if/\the\toks@/\else
2772 \errhelp{language.dat loads no language, only synonyms}
2773 \errmessage{0rphan language synonym}
2774 \fi
2775 \advance\last@language\@ne
2776 \edef\bbl@tempa{%
2777 \everyjob{%
2778 \the\everyjob
2779 \ifx\typeout\@undefined
2780 \immediate\write16%
2781 \else
2782 \noexpand\typeout
2783 \fi
2784 {\the\toks8 \the\last@language\space language(s) loaded.}}}
2785 \advance\last@language\m@ne
2786 \bbl@tempa
```

Also remove some macros from memory and raise an error if \toks@ is not empty. Finally load switch.def, but the latter is not required and the line inputting it may be commented out.

```
2787 \let\bbl@line\@undefined
2788 \let\process@line\@undefined
2789 \let\process@synonym\@undefined
2790 \let\process@language\@undefined
2791 \let\bbl@get@enc\@undefined
2792 \let\bbl@hyph@enc\@undefined
```

```

2793 \let\bbl@tempa\@undefined
2794 \let\bbl@hook@loadkernel\@undefined
2795 \let\bbl@hook@everylanguage\@undefined
2796 \let\bbl@hook@loadpatterns\@undefined
2797 \let\bbl@hook@loadexceptions\@undefined
2798 </patterns>

```

Here the code for `iniTeX` ends.

12 Font handling with fontspec

Add the bidi handler just before `luaotfload`, which is loaded by default by LaTeX. Just in case, consider the possibility it has not been loaded. First, a couple of definitions related to `bidi` [misplaced].

```

2799 <<*More package options>> ≡
2800 \ifodd\bbl@engine
2801   \DeclareOption{bidi=basic-r}%
2802   {\let\bbl@beforeforeign\leavevmode
2803    \newattribute\bbl@attr@dir
2804    \bbl@exp{\output{\bodydir\pagedir\the\output}}%
2805    \AtEndOfPackage{\EnableBabelHook{babel-bidi}}}
2806 \else
2807   \DeclareOption{bidi=basic-r}%
2808   {\bbl@error
2809    {The bidi method 'basic-r' is available only in\\%
2810     luatex. I'll continue with 'bidi=default', so\\%
2811     expect wrong results}%
2812    {See the manual for further details.}%
2813    \let\bbl@beforeforeign\leavevmode
2814    \AtEndOfPackage{%
2815     \EnableBabelHook{babel-bidi}%
2816     \bbl@xebidipar}}
2817 \fi
2818 \DeclareOption{bidi=default}%
2819 {\let\bbl@beforeforeign\leavevmode
2820  \ifodd\bbl@engine
2821   \newattribute\bbl@attr@dir
2822   \bbl@exp{\output{\bodydir\pagedir\the\output}}%
2823  \fi
2824  \AtEndOfPackage{%
2825   \EnableBabelHook{babel-bidi}%
2826   \ifodd\bbl@engine\else
2827    \bbl@xebidipar
2828   \fi}}
2829 <</More package options>>

```

With explicit languages, we could define the font at once, but we don't. Just wait and see if the language is actually activated.

```

2830 <<*Font selection>> ≡
2831 \bbl@trace{Font handling with fontspec}
2832 \@onlypreamble\babelfont
2833 \newcommand\babelfont[2][{}% 1=langs/scripts 2=fam
2834  \edef\bbl@tempa{#1}%
2835  \def\bbl@tempb{#2}%
2836  \ifx\fontspec\@undefined
2837   \usepackage{fontspec}%
2838  \fi

```

```

2839 \EnableBabelHook{babel-fontspec}%
2840 \bbl@bblfont}
2841 \newcommand\bbl@bblfont[2][{}]{% 1=features 2=fontname
2842 \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@tempb family}{\bbl@providefam{\bbl@tempb}}{}}%
2843 \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@lsys@language}{\bbl@provide@lsys{\language}}{}}%
2844 \expandafter\bbl@ifblank\expandafter{\bbl@tempa}%
2845 {\bbl@csarg\edef{\bbl@tempb dflt@}{<{#1}{#2}}}% save bbl@rmdflt@
2846 \bbl@exp{%
2847 \let\<\bbl@\bbl@tempb dflt@\language>\<\bbl@\bbl@tempb dflt@>%
2848 \\\bbl@font@set\<\bbl@\bbl@tempb dflt@\language>%
2849 \<\bbl@tempb default>\<\bbl@tempb family>}}%
2850 {\bbl@foreach\bbl@tempa{% ie bbl@rmdflt@lang / *scrt
2851 \bbl@csarg\def{\bbl@tempb dflt@##1}{<{#1}{#2}}}}}%

```

If the family in the previous command does not exist, it must be defined. Here is how:

```

2852 \def\bbl@providefam#1{%
2853 \bbl@exp{%
2854 \\\newcommand\<#1default>{}% Just define it
2855 \\\bbl@add@list\\bbl@font@fams{#1}%
2856 \\\DeclareRobustCommand\<#1family>{%
2857 \\\not@math@alphabet\<#1family>\relax
2858 \\\fontfamily\<#1default>\selectfont}%
2859 \\\DeclareTextFontCommand{\text{#1}}{\<#1family>}}}

```

The following macro is activated when the hook babel-fontspec is enabled.

```

2860 \def\bbl@switchfont{%
2861 \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@lsys@language}{\bbl@provide@lsys{\language}}{}}%
2862 \bbl@exp{% eg Arabic -> arabic
2863 \lowercase{\edef\\bbl@tempa{\bbl@cs{sname@language}}}}%
2864 \bbl@foreach\bbl@font@fams{%
2865 \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@##1dflt@language}% (1) language?
2866 {\bbl@ifunset{\bbl@##1dflt@*\bbl@tempa}% (2) from script?
2867 {\bbl@ifunset{\bbl@##1dflt@}% 2=F - (3) from generic?
2868 {}% 123=F - nothing!
2869 {\bbl@exp{% 3=T - from generic
2870 \global\let\<\bbl@##1dflt@language>%
2871 \<\bbl@##1dflt@>}}}%
2872 {\bbl@exp{% 2=T - from script
2873 \global\let\<\bbl@##1dflt@language>%
2874 \<\bbl@##1dflt@*\bbl@tempa>}}}%
2875 {}% 1=T - language, already defined
2876 \def\bbl@tempa{%
2877 \bbl@warning{The current font is not a standard family.\\%
2878 Script and Language are not applied. Consider defining\\%
2879 a new family with \string\babelfont,}}%
2880 \bbl@foreach\bbl@font@fams{% don't gather with prev for
2881 \bbl@ifunset{\bbl@##1dflt@language}%
2882 {\bbl@cs{famrst@##1}%
2883 \global\bbl@csarg\let{famrst@##1}\relax}%
2884 {\bbl@exp{% order is relevant
2885 \\\bbl@add\\originalTeX{%
2886 \\\bbl@font@rst{\bbl@cs{##1dflt@language}}%
2887 \<##1default>\<##1family>{##1}}%
2888 \\\bbl@font@set\<\bbl@##1dflt@language>% the main part!
2889 \<##1default>\<##1family>}}}%
2890 \bbl@ifrestoring{}{\bbl@tempa}}%

```

Now the macros defining the font with fontspec.

When there are repeated keys in fontspec, the last value wins. So, we just place the ini settings at the beginning, and user settings will take precedence.

```

2891 \def\bbl@font@set#1#2#3{%
2892   \bbl@xin@{<>}{#1}%
2893   \fin@
2894   \bbl@exp{\bbl@fontspec@set\#1\expandafter\@gobbletwo#1}%
2895   \fi
2896   \bbl@exp{%
2897     \def\#2{#1}%          eg, \rmdefault{\bbl@rm1dflt@lang}
2898     \bbl@ifsamestring{#2}{\f@family}{\#3\let\bbl@tempa\relax}{}}
2899 \def\bbl@fontspec@set#1#2#3{%
2900   \bbl@exp{\<fontspec_set_family:Nnn>\#1%
2901     {\bbl@cs{lsys@\language},#2}}{#3}%
2902   \bbl@toglobal#1}%

```

font@rst and famrst are only used when there is no global settings, to save and restore de previous families. Not really necessary, but done for optimization.

```

2903 \def\bbl@font@rst#1#2#3#4{%
2904   \bbl@csarg\def{famrst@#4}{\bbl@font@set{#1}#2#3}}

```

The default font families. They are eurocentric, but the list can be expanded easily with \babelfont.

```

2905 \def\bbl@font@fams{rm,sf,tt}

```

The old tentative way. Short and preverved for compatibility, but deprecated. Note there is no direct alternative for \babelFSfeatures. The reason in explained in the user guide, but essentially – that was not the way to go :-).

```

2906 \newcommand\babelFSstore[2][]{%
2907   \bbl@ifblank{#1}%
2908   {\bbl@csarg\def{sname@#2}{Latin}}%
2909   {\bbl@csarg\def{sname@#2}{#1}}%
2910   \bbl@provide@dirs{#2}%
2911   \bbl@csarg\ifnum{wdir@#2}>\z@
2912     \let\bbl@beforeforeign\leavevmode
2913     \EnableBabelHook{babel-bidi}%
2914   \fi
2915   \bbl@foreach{#2}{%
2916     \bbl@FSstore{##1}{rm}\rmdefault\bbl@save@rmdefault
2917     \bbl@FSstore{##1}{sf}\sfdefault\bbl@save@sfdefault
2918     \bbl@FSstore{##1}{tt}\ttdefault\bbl@save@ttdefault}}
2919 \def\bbl@FSstore#1#2#3#4{%
2920   \bbl@csarg\edef{#2default#1}{#3}%
2921   \expandafter\addto\csname extras#1\endcsname{%
2922     \let#4#3%
2923     \ifx#3\f@family
2924       \edef#3{\csname bbl@#2default#1\endcsname}%
2925       \fontfamily{#3}\selectfont
2926     \else
2927       \edef#3{\csname bbl@#2default#1\endcsname}%
2928       \fi}%
2929   \expandafter\addto\csname noextras#1\endcsname{%
2930     \ifx#3\f@family
2931       \fontfamily{#4}\selectfont
2932     \fi
2933     \let#3#4}}
2934 \let\bbl@langfeatures\@empty
2935 \def\babelFSfeatures{% make sure \fontspec is redefined once
2936   \let\bbl@ori@fontspec\fontspec

```

```

2937 \renewcommand\fontspec[1][\{%
2938   \bbl@ori@fontspec[\bbl@langfeatures##1]}
2939 \let\babelFSfeatures\bbl@FSfeatures
2940 \babelFSfeatures}
2941 \def\bbl@FSfeatures#1#2{%
2942   \expandafter\addto\csname extras#1\endcsname{%
2943     \babel@save\bbl@langfeatures
2944     \edef\bbl@langfeatures{#2,}}
2945 <</Font selection>>

```

13 Hooks for XeTeX and LuaTeX

13.1 XeTeX

Unfortunately, the current encoding cannot be retrieved and therefore it is reset always to utf8, which seems a sensible default.

ℒ_{TeX} sets many “codes” just before loading hyphen.cfg. That is not a problem in luatex, but in xetex they must be reset to the proper value. Most of the work is done in xe(la)tex.ini, so here we just “undo” some of the changes done by ℒ_{TeX}. Anyway, for consistency Lua_{TeX} also resets the catcodes.

```

2946 <<(*Restore Unicode catcodes before loading patterns)>> ≡
2947 \begingroup
2948   % Reset chars "80-"C0 to category "other", no case mapping:
2949   \catcode`\@=11 \count@=128
2950   \loop\ifnum\count@<192
2951     \global\uccode\count@=0 \global\lccode\count@=0
2952     \global\catcode\count@=12 \global\sffcode\count@=1000
2953     \advance\count@ by 1 \repeat
2954   % Other:
2955   \def\O ##1 {%
2956     \global\uccode"##1=0 \global\lccode"##1=0
2957     \global\catcode"##1=12 \global\sffcode"##1=1000 }%
2958   % Letter:
2959   \def\L ##1 ##2 ##3 {\global\catcode"##1=11
2960     \global\uccode"##1="##2
2961     \global\lccode"##1="##3
2962     % Uppercase letters have sffcode=999:
2963     \ifnum"##1="##3 \else \global\sffcode"##1=999 \fi }%
2964   % Letter without case mappings:
2965   \def\l ##1 {\L ##1 ##1 ##1 }%
2966   \l 00AA
2967   \L 00B5 039C 00B5
2968   \l 00BA
2969   \O 00D7
2970   \l 00DF
2971   \O 00F7
2972   \L 00FF 0178 00FF
2973 \endgroup
2974 \input #1\relax
2975 <</Restore Unicode catcodes before loading patterns>>

```

Some more common code.

```

2976 <<(*Footnote changes)>> ≡
2977 \bbl@trace{Bidi footnotes}
2978 \ifx\bbl@beforeforeign\leavevmode
2979   \def\bbl@footnote#1#2#3{%
2980     \@ifnextchar[%

```



```

2981      {\bbl@footnote@o{#1}{#2}{#3}}%
2982      {\bbl@footnote@x{#1}{#2}{#3}}}
2983 \def\bbl@footnote@x#1#2#3#4{%
2984   \bgroup
2985   \select@language@x{\bbl@main@language}%
2986   \bbl@fn@footnote{#2#1{\ignorespaces#4}#3}%
2987   \egroup}
2988 \def\bbl@footnote@o#1#2#3[#4]#5{%
2989   \bgroup
2990   \select@language@x{\bbl@main@language}%
2991   \bbl@fn@footnote[#4]{#2#1{\ignorespaces#5}#3}%
2992   \egroup}
2993 \def\bbl@footnotetext#1#2#3{%
2994   \@ifnextchar[%
2995     {\bbl@footnotetext@o{#1}{#2}{#3}}%
2996     {\bbl@footnotetext@x{#1}{#2}{#3}}}
2997 \def\bbl@footnotetext@x#1#2#3#4{%
2998   \bgroup
2999   \select@language@x{\bbl@main@language}%
3000   \bbl@fn@footnotetext{#2#1{\ignorespaces#4}#3}%
3001   \egroup}
3002 \def\bbl@footnotetext@o#1#2#3[#4]#5{%
3003   \bgroup
3004   \select@language@x{\bbl@main@language}%
3005   \bbl@fn@footnotetext[#4]{#2#1{\ignorespaces#5}#3}%
3006   \egroup}
3007 \def\BabelFootnote#1#2#3#4{%
3008   \ifx\bbl@fn@footnote\@undefined
3009     \let\bbl@fn@footnote\footnote
3010   \fi
3011   \ifx\bbl@fn@footnotetext\@undefined
3012     \let\bbl@fn@footnotetext\footnotetext
3013   \fi
3014   \bbl@ifblank{#2}%
3015     {\def#1{\bbl@footnote{\@firstofone}{#3}{#4}}
3016     \@namedef{\bbl@stripslash#1text}%
3017     {\bbl@footnotetext{\@firstofone}{#3}{#4}}}%
3018     {\def#1{\bbl@exp{\bbl@footnote{\foreignlanguage{#2}}}{#3}{#4}}%
3019     \@namedef{\bbl@stripslash#1text}%
3020     {\bbl@exp{\bbl@footnotetext{\foreignlanguage{#2}}}{#3}{#4}}}%
3021 \fi
3022 <</Footnote changes>>

```

Now, the code.

```

3023 (*xetex)
3024 \def\BabelStringsDefault{unicode}
3025 \let\xebbl@stop\relax
3026 \AddBabelHook{xetex}{encodedcommands}{%
3027   \def\bbl@tempa{#1}%
3028   \ifx\bbl@tempa\@empty
3029     \XeTeXinputencoding"bytes"%
3030   \else
3031     \XeTeXinputencoding"#1"%
3032   \fi
3033   \def\xebbl@stop{\XeTeXinputencoding"utf8"}}
3034 \AddBabelHook{xetex}{stopcommands}{%
3035   \xebbl@stop
3036   \let\xebbl@stop\relax}
3037 \AddBabelHook{xetex}{loadkernel}{%

```

```

3038 <<Restore Unicode catcodes before loading patterns>>}
3039 \ifx\DisableBabelHook\undefined\endinput\fi
3040 \AddBabelHook{babel-fontspec}{afterextras}{\bbl@switchfont}
3041 \DisableBabelHook{babel-fontspec}
3042 <<Font selection>>
3043 \input txtbabel.def
3044 </xetex>

```

13.2 Layout

In progress.

Unfortunately, proper support for xetex requires patching somehow lots of macros and packages (and some issues related to `\specials` remain, like color and hyperlinks). At least at this stage, babel will not do it and therefore a package like bidi (by Vafa Khalighi) would be necessary to overcome the limitations of xetex. Any help in making babel and bidi collaborate will be welcome, although the underlying concepts in both packages seem very different. Note also elements like headlines and margins can be modified easily with packages like fancyhdr, typearea or titleps, and geometry.

`\bbl@startskip` and `\bbl@endskip` are available to package authors. Thanks to the T_EX expansion mechanism the following constructs are valid: `\adim\bbl@startskip`, `\advance\bbl@startskip\adim`, `\bbl@startskip\adim`.

Consider `txtbabel` as a shorthand for *tex-xet babel*, which is the bidi model in both pdfTeX and xetex.

```

3045 <*texxet>
3046 \bbl@trace{Redefinitions for bidi layout}
3047 \ifx\bbl@opt@layout\@nnil\endinput\fi % No layout
3048 \def\bbl@startskip{\ifcase\bbl@thepardir\leftskip\else\rightskip\fi}
3049 \def\bbl@endskip{\ifcase\bbl@thepardir\rightskip\else\leftskip\fi}
3050 \ifx\bbl@beforeforeign\leavevmode % A poor test for bidi=
3051   \def\@hangfrom#1{%
3052     \setbox\@tempboxa\hbox{#1}%
3053     \hangindent\ifcase\bbl@thepardir\wd\@tempboxa\else-\wd\@tempboxa\fi
3054     \noindent\box\@tempboxa}
3055   \def\raggedright{%
3056     \let\@centercr
3057     \bbl@startskip\z@skip
3058     \@rightskip\@flushglue
3059     \bbl@endskip\@rightskip
3060     \parindent\z@
3061     \parfillskip\bbl@startskip}
3062   \def\raggedleft{%
3063     \let\@centercr
3064     \bbl@startskip\@flushglue
3065     \bbl@endskip\z@skip
3066     \parindent\z@
3067     \parfillskip\bbl@endskip}
3068 \fi
3069 \IfBabelLayout{lists}
3070   {\def\list#1#2{%
3071     \ifnum \@listdepth >5\relax
3072       \@toodeep
3073     \else
3074       \global\advance\@listdepth\@ne
3075     \fi
3076     \rightmargin\z@
3077     \listparindent\z@
3078     \itemindent\z@

```

```

3079 \csname @list\romannumeral\the\@listdepth\endcsname
3080 \def\@itemlabel{#1}%
3081 \let\makelabel\@mklab
3082 \@nmbrlistfalse
3083 #2\relax
3084 \@trivlist
3085 \parskip\parsep
3086 \parindent\listparindent
3087 \advance\linewidth-\rightmargin
3088 \advance\linewidth-\leftmargin
3089 \advance\@totalleftmargin
3090 \ifcase\bbbl@thepardir\leftmargin\else\rightmargin\fi
3091 \parshape\@ne\@totalleftmargin\linewidth
3092 \ignorespaces}%
3093 \ifcase\bbbl@engine
3094 \def\labelenumii{}\theenumii{%
3095 \def\p@enumiii{\p@enumii}\theenumii{%
3096 \fi
3097 \def\@verbatim{%
3098 \trivlist \item\relax
3099 \if@minipage\else\vskip\parskip\fi
3100 \bbbl@startskip\textwidth
3101 \advance\bbbl@startskip-\linewidth
3102 \bbbl@endskip\z@skip
3103 \parindent\z@
3104 \parfillskip\@flushglue
3105 \parskip\z@skip
3106 \@@par
3107 \language\@nohyphenation
3108 \@tempwafalse
3109 \def\par{%
3110 \if@tempswa
3111 \leavevmode\null
3112 \@@par\penalty\interlinepenalty
3113 \else
3114 \@tempswatrue
3115 \ifhmode\@@par\penalty\interlinepenalty\fi
3116 \fi}%
3117 \let\do\@makeother \dospecials
3118 \obeylines \verbatim@font \@noligs
3119 \everypar\expandafter{\the\everypar\unpenalty}}
3120 {}
3121 \IfBabelLayout{contents}
3122 {\def\@dottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{%
3123 \ifnum#1>\c@tocdepth\else
3124 \vskip \z@ \@plus.2\p@
3125 {\bbbl@startskip#2\relax
3126 \bbbl@endskip\@tocrmarg
3127 \parfillskip-\bbbl@endskip
3128 \parindent#2\relax
3129 \@afterindenttrue
3130 \interlinepenalty\@M
3131 \leavevmode
3132 \@tempdima#3\relax
3133 \advance\bbbl@startskip\@tempdima
3134 \null\nobreak\hskip-\bbbl@startskip
3135 {#4}\nobreak
3136 \leaders\hbox{%
3137 $m@th\mkern\@dotsep mu\hbox{.}\mkern\@dotsep mu$}%

```

```

3138         \hfill\nobreak
3139         \hb@xt@{\pnumwidth}{\hfil\normalfont\normalcolor#5}%
3140         \par}%
3141     \fi}}
3142 {}
3143 \IfBabelLayout{columns}
3144 {\def\@outputdblcol{%
3145     \if@firstcolumn
3146         \global\@firstcolumnfalse
3147         \global\setbox\@leftcolumn\copy\@outputbox
3148         \splitmaxdepth\maxdimen
3149         \vbadness\maxdimen
3150         \setbox\@outputbox\vbox{\unvbox\@outputbox\unskip}%
3151         \setbox\@outputbox\vsplit\@outputbox to\maxdimen
3152         \toks@{\expandafter{\topmark}}%
3153         \xdef\@firstcoltopmark{\the\toks@}%
3154         \toks@\expandafter{\splitfirstmark}%
3155         \xdef\@firstcolfirstmark{\the\toks@}%
3156         \ifx\@firstcolfirstmark\@empty
3157             \global\let\@setmarks\relax
3158         \else
3159             \gdef\@setmarks{%
3160                 \let\firstmark\@firstcolfirstmark
3161                 \let\topmark\@firstcoltopmark}%
3162         \fi
3163     \else
3164         \global\@firstcolumntrue
3165         \setbox\@outputbox\vbox{%
3166             \hb@xt@\textwidth{%
3167                 \hskip\columnwidth
3168                 \hfil
3169                 {\normalcolor\vrule \@width\columnseprule}%
3170                 \hfil
3171                 \hb@xt@\columnwidth{\box\@leftcolumn \hss}%
3172                 \hskip-\textwidth
3173                 \hb@xt@\columnwidth{\box\@outputbox \hss}%
3174                 \hskip\columnsep
3175                 \hskip\columnwidth}}%
3176         \@combinedblfloats
3177         \@setmarks
3178         \@outputpage
3179         \beginingroup
3180             \@dblfloatplacement
3181             \@startdblcolumn
3182             \@whiles\if@fcolmade \fi{\@outputpage
3183                 \@startdblcolumn}%
3184         \endgroup
3185     \fi}}%
3186 {}
3187 <<Footnote changes>>
3188 \IfBabelLayout{footnotes}%
3189 {\BabelFootnote\footnote\language\{}}%
3190 \BabelFootnote\localfootnote\language\{}}%
3191 \BabelFootnote\mainfootnote\{}}%
3192 {}

```

Implicitly reverses sectioning labels in bidi=basic-r, because the full stop is not in contact with L numbers any more. I think there must be a better way.

```

3193 \IfBabelLayout{counters}%

```

```

3194 {\let\bbl@latinarabic=\@arabic
3195 \def\@arabic#1{\babelsublr{\bbl@latinarabic#1}}}%
3196 \let\bbl@asciroman=\@roman
3197 \def\@roman#1{\babelsublr{\ensureascii{\bbl@asciroman#1}}}%
3198 \let\bbl@asciiRoman=\@Roman
3199 \def\@Roman#1{\babelsublr{\ensureascii{\bbl@asciiRoman#1}}}{}}
3200 </texxet>

```

13.3 LuaTeX

The new loader for luatex is based solely on `language.dat`, which is read on the fly. The code shouldn't be executed when the format is build, so we check if `\AddBabelHook` is defined. Then comes a modified version of the loader in `hyphen.cfg` (without the `hyphenmins` stuff, which is under the direct control of `babel`).

The names `\l@<language>` are defined and take some value from the beginning because all `ldf` files assume this for the corresponding language to be considered valid, but patterns are not loaded (except the first one). This is done later, when the language is first selected (which usually means when the `ldf` finishes). If a language has been loaded, `\bbl@hyphendata@<num>` exists (with the names of the files read).

The default setup preloads the first language into the format. This is intended mainly for 'english', so that it's available without further intervention from the user. To avoid duplicating it, the following rule applies: if the "0th" language and the first language in `language.dat` have the same name then just ignore the latter. If there are new synonymous, they are added, but note if the language patterns have not been preloaded they won't at run time.

Other preloaded languages could be read twice, if they have been preloaded into the format. This is not optimal, but it shouldn't happen very often – with luatex patterns are best loaded when the document is typeset, and the "0th" language is preloaded just for backwards compatibility.

As of 1.1b, lua(e)tex is taken into account. Formerly, loading of patterns on the fly didn't work in this format, but with the new loader it does. Unfortunately, the format is not based on `babel`, and data could be duplicated, because languages are reassigned above those in the format (nothing serious, anyway). Note even with this format `language.dat` is used (under the principle of a single source), instead of `language.def`.

Of course, there is room for improvements, like tools to read and reassign languages, which would require modifying the language list, and better error handling.

We need catcode tables, but no format (targeted by `babel`) provide a command to allocate them (although there are packages like `ctablestack`). For the moment, a dangerous approach is used – just allocate a high random number and cross the fingers. To complicate things, `etex.sty` changes the way languages are allocated.

```

3201 <*luatex>
3202 \ifx\AddBabelHook\@undefined
3203 \bbl@trace{Read language.dat}
3204 \begingroup
3205 \toks@{}
3206 \count@ \z@ % 0=start, 1=0th, 2=normal
3207 \def\bbl@process@line#1#2 #3 #4 {%
3208   \ifx=#1%
3209     \bbl@process@synonym{#2}%
3210   \else
3211     \bbl@process@language{#1#2}{#3}{#4}%
3212   \fi
3213   \ignorespaces}
3214 \def\bbl@manylang{%
3215   \ifnum\bbl@last>\@ne

```

```

3216     \bbl@info{Non-standard hyphenation setup}%
3217     \fi
3218     \let\bbl@manylang\relax}
3219 \def\bbl@process@language#1#2#3{%
3220     \ifcase\count@
3221         \@ifundefined{zth@#1}{\count@=\tw@}{\count@=\@ne}%
3222     \or
3223         \count@=\tw@
3224     \fi
3225     \ifnum\count@=\tw@
3226         \expandafter\addlanguage\csname l@#1\endcsname
3227         \language\allocationnumber
3228         \chardef\bbl@last\allocationnumber
3229         \bbl@manylang
3230         \let\bbl@elt\relax
3231         \xdef\bbl@languages{%
3232             \bbl@languages\bbl@elt{#1}{\the\language}{#2}{#3}}%
3233     \fi
3234     \the\toks@
3235     \toks@{}}
3236 \def\bbl@process@synonym@aux#1#2{%
3237     \global\expandafter\chardef\csname l@#1\endcsname#2\relax
3238     \let\bbl@elt\relax
3239     \xdef\bbl@languages{%
3240         \bbl@languages\bbl@elt{#1}{#2}{}}}%
3241 \def\bbl@process@synonym#1{%
3242     \ifcase\count@
3243         \toks@\expandafter{\the\toks@\relax\bbl@process@synonym{#1}}%
3244     \or
3245         \@ifundefined{zth@#1}{\bbl@process@synonym@aux{#1}{0}}{}%
3246     \else
3247         \bbl@process@synonym@aux{#1}{\the\bbl@last}%
3248     \fi}
3249 \ifx\bbl@languages\@undefined % Just a (sensible?) guess
3250     \chardef\l@english\z@
3251     \chardef\l@USenglish\z@
3252     \chardef\bbl@last\z@
3253     \global\@namedef{\bbl@hyphendata@0}{\hyphen.tex}{}
3254     \gdef\bbl@languages{%
3255         \bbl@elt{english}{0}{\hyphen.tex}{}%
3256         \bbl@elt{USenglish}{0}{}}
3257 \else
3258     \global\let\bbl@languages@format\bbl@languages
3259     \def\bbl@elt#1#2#3#4{% Remove all except language 0
3260         \ifnum#2>\z@\else
3261             \noexpand\bbl@elt{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}%
3262         \fi}%
3263     \xdef\bbl@languages{\bbl@languages}%
3264     \fi
3265     \def\bbl@elt#1#2#3#4{\@namedef{zth@#1}{}} % Define flags
3266     \bbl@languages
3267     \openin1=language.dat
3268     \ifeof1
3269         \bbl@warning{I couldn't find language.dat. No additional\\%
3270             patterns loaded. Reported}%
3271     \else
3272         \loop
3273             \endlinechar\m@ne
3274             \read1 to \bbl@line

```

```

3275 \endlinechar\^^M
3276 \if T\ifeof1F\fi T\relax
3277 \ifx\bbbl@line\@empty\else
3278 \edef\bbbl@line{\bbbl@line\space\space\space}%
3279 \expandafter\bbbl@process@line\bbbl@line\relax
3280 \fi
3281 \repeat
3282 \fi
3283 \endgroup
3284 \bbbl@trace{Macros for reading patterns files}
3285 \def\bbbl@get@enc#1:#2:#3\@@@{\def\bbbl@hyph@enc{#2}}
3286 \ifx\babelcatcodetablenum\undefined
3287 \def\babelcatcodetablenum{5211}
3288 \fi
3289 \def\bbbl@luapatterns#1#2{%
3290 \bbbl@get@enc#1::\@@@
3291 \setbox\z@\hbox\bgroup
3292 \begingroup
3293 \ifx\catcodetable\undefined
3294 \let\savecatcodetable\luatexsavecatcodetable
3295 \let\initcatcodetable\luatexinitcatcodetable
3296 \let\catcodetable\luatexcatcodetable
3297 \fi
3298 \savecatcodetable\babelcatcodetablenum\relax
3299 \initcatcodetable\numexpr\babelcatcodetablenum+1\relax
3300 \catcodetable\numexpr\babelcatcodetablenum+1\relax
3301 \catcode`\_#6 \catcode`\$#3 \catcode`\&#4 \catcode`\^#7
3302 \catcode`\_#8 \catcode`\{#1 \catcode`\}=2 \catcode`\~#13
3303 \catcode`\@#11 \catcode`\^^I#10 \catcode`\^^J#12
3304 \catcode`\<#12 \catcode`\>#12 \catcode`\*#12 \catcode`\.=12
3305 \catcode`\-#12 \catcode`\/#12 \catcode`\[#12 \catcode`\]=12
3306 \catcode`\`#12 \catcode`\'#12 \catcode`\"#12
3307 \input #1\relax
3308 \catcodetable\babelcatcodetablenum\relax
3309 \endgroup
3310 \def\bbbl@tempa{#2}%
3311 \ifx\bbbl@tempa\@empty\else
3312 \input #2\relax
3313 \fi
3314 \egroup}%
3315 \def\bbbl@patterns@lua#1{%
3316 \language=\expandafter\ifx\csname l@#1:\f@encoding\endcsname\relax
3317 \csname l@#1\endcsname
3318 \edef\bbbl@tempa{#1}%
3319 \else
3320 \csname l@#1:\f@encoding\endcsname
3321 \edef\bbbl@tempa{#1:\f@encoding}%
3322 \fi\relax
3323 \@namedef{lu@texhyphen@loaded@the\language}{}% Temp
3324 \@ifundefined{bbbl@hyphendata@the\language}%
3325 {\def\bbbl@elt##1##2##3##4{%
3326 \ifnum##2=\csname l@bbbl@tempa\endcsname % #2=spanish, dutch:OT1...
3327 \def\bbbl@tempb{##3}%
3328 \ifx\bbbl@tempb\@empty\else % if not a synonymous
3329 \def\bbbl@tempc{{##3}{##4}}%
3330 \fi
3331 \bbbl@csarg\xdef{hyphendata@##2}{\bbbl@tempc}%
3332 \fi}%
3333 \bbbl@languages

```

```

3334 \ifundefined{bbl@hyphendata@the\language}%
3335 {\bbl@info{No hyphenation patterns were set for\%
3336 language '\bbl@tempa'. Reported}}%
3337 {\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\bbl@luapatterns
3338 \csname bbl@hyphendata@the\language\endcsname}}}}
3339 \endinput\fi
3340 \begingroup
3341 \catcode`\%=12
3342 \catcode`\'=12
3343 \catcode`\%=12
3344 \catcode`\:=12
3345 \directlua{
3346 Babel = Babel or {}
3347 function Babel.bytes(line)
3348 return line:gsub("(.)",
3349 function (chr) return unicode.utf8.char(string.byte(chr)) end)
3350 end
3351 function Babel.begin_process_input()
3352 if luatexbase and luatexbase.add_to_callback then
3353 luatexbase.add_to_callback('process_input_buffer',
3354 Babel.bytes, 'Babel.bytes')
3355 else
3356 Babel.callback = callback.find('process_input_buffer')
3357 callback.register('process_input_buffer', Babel.bytes)
3358 end
3359 end
3360 function Babel.end_process_input ()
3361 if luatexbase and luatexbase.remove_from_callback then
3362 luatexbase.remove_from_callback('process_input_buffer', 'Babel.bytes')
3363 else
3364 callback.register('process_input_buffer', Babel.callback)
3365 end
3366 end
3367 function Babel.addpatterns(pp, lg)
3368 local lg = lang.new(lg)
3369 local pats = lang.patterns(lg) or ''
3370 lang.clear_patterns(lg)
3371 for p in pp:gmatch('[^%s]+') do
3372 ss = ''
3373 for i in string.utfcharacters(p:gsub('%d', '')) do
3374 ss = ss .. '%d?' .. i
3375 end
3376 ss = ss:gsub('^%%d%?%', '%%.') .. '%d?'
3377 ss = ss:gsub('%.%%d%?$', '%%.')
3378 pats, n = pats:gsub('%s' .. ss .. '%s', ' ' .. p .. ' ')
3379 if n == 0 then
3380 tex.sprint(
3381 [[\string\csname\space bbl@info\endcsname{New pattern: }}
3382 .. p .. [{}]])
3383 pats = pats .. ' ' .. p
3384 else
3385 tex.sprint(
3386 [[\string\csname\space bbl@info\endcsname{Renew pattern: }}
3387 .. p .. [{}]])
3388 end
3389 end
3390 lang.patterns(lg, pats)
3391 end
3392 }

```



```

3393 \endgroup
3394 \def\BabelStringsDefault{unicode}
3395 \let\luabbl@stop\relax
3396 \AddBabelHook{luatex}{encodedcommands}{%
3397   \def\bbl@tempa{utf8}\def\bbl@tempb{#1}%
3398   \ifx\bbl@tempa\bbl@tempb\else
3399     \directlua{Babel.begin_process_input()}%
3400     \def\luabbl@stop{%
3401       \directlua{Babel.end_process_input()}}%
3402   \fi}%
3403 \AddBabelHook{luatex}{stopcommands}{%
3404   \luabbl@stop
3405   \let\luabbl@stop\relax}
3406 \AddBabelHook{luatex}{patterns}{%
3407   \@ifundefined{bbl@hyphendata@the\language}%
3408   {\def\bbl@elt##1##2##3##4{%
3409     \ifnum##2=\csname l@#2\endcsname % #2=spanish, dutch:OT1...
3410     \def\bbl@tempb{##3}%
3411     \ifx\bbl@tempb\empty\else % if not a synonymous
3412       \def\bbl@tempc{{##3}{##4}}%
3413       \fi
3414       \bbl@csarg\xdef{hyphendata@##2}{\bbl@tempc}%
3415     \fi}%
3416   \bbl@languages
3417   \@ifundefined{bbl@hyphendata@the\language}%
3418   {\bbl@info{No hyphenation patterns were set for\%
3419     language '#2'. Reported}}%
3420   {\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\bbl@luapatterns
3421     \csname bbl@hyphendata@the\language\endcsname}}}%
3422 \@ifundefined{bbl@patterns@}{%
3423   \begingroup
3424   \bbl@xin@{,\number\language,},{,\bbl@pttnlist}%
3425   \ifin@else
3426     \ifx\bbl@patterns@\empty\else
3427       \directlua{ Babel.addpatterns(
3428         [[\bbl@patterns@]], \number\language) }%
3429       \fi
3430       \@ifundefined{bbl@patterns@#1}%
3431       {\empty
3432        {\directlua{ Babel.addpatterns(
3433          [[\space\csname bbl@patterns@#1\endcsname]],
3434          \number\language) }}%
3435        \xdef\bbl@pttnlist{\bbl@pttnlist\number\language,}%
3436        \fi
3437      \endgroup}}
3438 \AddBabelHook{luatex}{everylanguage}{%
3439   \def\process@language##1##2##3{%
3440     \def\process@line####1####2 ####3 ####4 {}}}
3441 \AddBabelHook{luatex}{loadpatterns}{%
3442   \input #1\relax
3443   \expandafter\gdef\csname bbl@hyphendata@the\language\endcsname
3444     {{#1}}}}
3445 \AddBabelHook{luatex}{loadexceptions}{%
3446   \input #1\relax
3447   \def\bbl@tempb##1##2{{##1}{##2}}%
3448   \expandafter\xdef\csname bbl@hyphendata@the\language\endcsname
3449     {\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\bbl@tempb
3450       \csname bbl@hyphendata@the\language\endcsname}}

```

`\babelpatterns` This macro adds patterns. Two macros are used to store them: `\bbl@patterns@` for the global ones and `\bbl@patterns@<lang>` for language ones. We make sure there is a space between words when multiple commands are used.

```

3451 \@onlypreamble\babelpatterns
3452 \AtEndOfPackage{%
3453   \newcommand\babelpatterns[2][\@empty]{%
3454     \ifx\bbl@patterns@relax
3455       \let\bbl@patterns@\@empty
3456     \fi
3457     \ifx\bbl@pttnlist\@empty\else
3458       \bbl@warning{%
3459         You must not intermingle \string\selectlanguage\space and\%
3460         \string\babelpatterns\space or some patterns will not\%
3461         be taken into account. Reported}%
3462     \fi
3463     \ifx\@empty#1%
3464       \protected@edef\bbl@patterns@\{\bbl@patterns@\space#2}%
3465     \else
3466       \edef\bbl@tempb{\zap@space#1 \@empty}%
3467       \bbl@for\bbl@tempa\bbl@tempb{%
3468         \bbl@fixname\bbl@tempa
3469         \bbl@iflanguage\bbl@tempa{%
3470           \bbl@csarg\protected@edef{patterns@\bbl@tempa}{%
3471             \@ifundefined{bbl@patterns@\bbl@tempa}%
3472               \@empty
3473               {\csname bbl@patterns@\bbl@tempa\endcsname\space}%
3474             #2}}}%
3475     \fi}}

```

Common stuff.

```

3476 \AddBabelHook{luatex}{loadkernel}{%
3477   <<Restore Unicode catcodes before loading patterns>>}}
3478 \ifx\DisableBabelHook\undefined\endinput\fi
3479 \AddBabelHook{babel-fontspec}{afterextras}{\bbl@switchfont}
3480 \DisableBabelHook{babel-fontspec}
3481 <<Font selection>>

```

13.4 Layout

Work in progress.

Unlike xetex, luatex requires only minimal changes for right-to-left layouts, particularly in monolingual documents (the engine itself reverses boxes – including column order or headings –, margins, etc.) and with `bidi=basic-r`, without having to patch almost any macro where text direction is relevant.

`\@hangfrom` is useful in many contexts and it is redefined always with the layout option. There are, however, a number of issues when the text direction is not the same as the box direction (as set by `\bodydir`), and when `\parbox` and `\hangindent` are involved.

Fortunately, latest releases of luatex simplify a lot the solution with `\shapemode`.

```

3482 \bbl@trace{Redefinitions for bidi layout}
3483 \ifx\bbl@opt@layout\@nnil\endinput\fi % if no layout
3484 \ifx\bbl@beforeforeign\leavevmode % A poor test for bidi=
3485   \def\bbl@nextfake#1{%
3486     \bbl@exp{%
3487       \mathdir\bodydir#1%
3488       \everyvbox{\bodydir\the\bodydir\everyvbox{}}}%
3489       \everyhbox{\bodydir\the\bodydir\everyhbox{}}}}%

```

```

3490 \def\hangfrom#1{%
3491   \setbox\@tempboxa\hbox{#{1}}}%
3492   \hangindent\wd\@tempboxa
3493   \ifnum\bbbl@getluadir{page}=\bbbl@getluadir{par}\else
3494     \shapemode\@ne
3495   \fi
3496   \noindent\box\@tempboxa}
3497 \fi
3498 \IfBabelLayout{tabular}% Experimental - don't use un production
3499 {\def\@tabular{%      eg, tabular inside tabular might not work
3500   \leavevmode\hbox\bgroup\bbbl@nextfake$%
3501   \let\@acol\@tabacol      \let\@classz\@tabclassz
3502   \let\@classiv\@tabclassiv \let\@tabularcr\@tabarray}}
3503 {}
3504 \IfBabelLayout{lists}
3505 {\def\list#1#2{%
3506   \ifnum \@listdepth >5\relax
3507     \@toodeep
3508   \else
3509     \global\advance\@listdepth\@ne
3510   \fi
3511   \rightmargin\z@
3512   \listparindent\z@
3513   \itemindent\z@
3514   \csname @list\romannumeral\the\@listdepth\endcsname
3515   \def\@itemlabel{#1}%
3516   \let\makelabel\@mklab
3517   \@nmbrlistfalse
3518   #2\relax
3519   \@trivlist
3520   \parskip\parsep
3521   \parindent\listparindent
3522   \advance\linewidth -\rightmargin
3523   \advance\linewidth -\leftmargin
3524   \advance\@totalleftmargin \leftmargin
3525   \parshape \@ne
3526   \@totalleftmargin \linewidth
3527   \ifnum\bbbl@getluadir{page}=\bbbl@getluadir{par}\else
3528     \shapemode\tw@
3529   \fi
3530   \ignorespaces}}
3531 {}

```

Implicitly reverses sectioning labels in bidi=basic-r, because the full stop is not in contact with L numbers any more. I think there must be a better way. Assumes bidi=basic-r, but there are some additional readjustments for bidi=default.

```

3532 \IfBabelLayout{counters}%
3533 {\def\@textsuperscript#1{#{1} lua has separate settings for math
3534   \m@th
3535   \mathdir\pagedir % required with basic-r; ok with default, too
3536   \ensuremath {^{\mbox {\fontsize \sf@size \z@ #1}}}}%
3537   \let\bbbl@latinarabic=@arabic
3538   \def\@arabic#1{\babelsublr{\bbbl@latinarabic#1}}%
3539   \@ifpackagewith{babel}{bidi=default}%
3540   {\let\bbbl@asciroman=@roman
3541     \def\@roman#1{\babelsublr{\ensureascii{\bbbl@asciroman#1}}}%
3542     \let\bbbl@asciiRoman=@Roman
3543     \def\@Roman#1{\babelsublr{\ensureascii{\bbbl@asciiRoman#1}}}%
3544     \def\labelenumii{}\theenumii}%

```

```

3545      \def\p@enumiii{\p@enumii}\theenumii{}{}{}{}
3546 <<Footnote changes>>
3547 \IfBabelLayout{footnotes}%
3548   {\BabelFootnote\footnote\language{}{}}%
3549   \BabelFootnote\localfootnote\language{}{}}%
3550   \BabelFootnote\mainfootnote{}{}{}{}
3551 {}
3552 </luatex>

```

13.5 Auto bidi with basic-r

The file `babel-bidi.lua` currently only contains data. It is a large and boring file and it's not shown here. See the generated file.

Now the `basic-r` bidi mode. One of the aims is to implement a fast and simple bidi algorithm, with a single loop. I managed to do it for R texts, with a second smaller loop for a special case. The code is still somewhat chaotic, but its behavior is essentially correct. I cannot resist copying the following text from Emacs `bidi.c` (which also attempts to implement the bidi algorithm with a single loop):

Arrrgh!! The UAX#9 algorithm is too deeply entrenched in the assumption of batch-style processing [...]. May the fleas of a thousand camels infest the armpits of those who design supposedly general-purpose algorithms by looking at their own implementations, and fail to consider other possible implementations!

Well, it took me some time to guess what the batch rules in UAX#9 actually mean (in other word, *what* they do and *why*, and not only *how*), but I think (or I hope) I've managed to understand them.

In some sense, there are two bidi modes, one for numbers, and the other for text.

Furthermore, setting just the direction in R text is not enough, because there are actually *two* R modes (set explicitly in Unicode with RLM and ALM). In `babel` the `dir` is set by a higher protocol based on the language/script, which in turn sets the correct `dir` (<l>, <r> or <al>).

From UAX#9: "Where available, markup should be used instead of the explicit formatting characters". So, this simple version just ignores formatting characters. Actually, most of that annex is devoted to how to handle them.

BD14-BD16 are not implemented. Unicode (and the W3C) are making a great effort to deal with some special problematic cases in "streamed" plain text. I don't think this is the way to go – particular issues should be fixed by a high level interface taking into account the needs of the document. And here is where `luatex` excels, because everything related to bidi writing is under our control.

TODO: math mode (as weak L?)

```

3553 <(*basic-r>
3554 Babel = Babel or {}
3555
3556 require('babel-bidi.lua')
3557
3558 local characters = Babel.characters
3559 local ranges = Babel.ranges
3560
3561 local DIR = node.id("dir")
3562
3563 local function dir_mark(head, from, to, outer)
3564   dir = (outer == 'r') and 'TLT' or 'TRT' -- ie, reverse
3565   local d = node.new(DIR)
3566   d.dir = '+' .. dir
3567   node.insert_before(head, from, d)

```

```

3568 d = node.new(DIR)
3569 d.dir = '-' .. dir
3570 node.insert_after(head, to, d)
3571 end
3572
3573 function Babel.pre_otfload(head)
3574   local first_n, last_n      -- first and last char with nums
3575   local last_es              -- an auxiliary 'last' used with nums
3576   local first_d, last_d      -- first and last char in L/R block
3577   local dir, dir_real

```

Next also depends on script/lang (<al>/<r>). To be set by babel. tex.pardir is dangerous, could be (re)set but it should be changed only in vmode. There are two strong's – strong = l/al/r and strong_lr = l/r (there must be a better way):

```

3578   local strong = ('TRT' == tex.pardir) and 'r' or 'l'
3579   local strong_lr = (strong == 'l') and 'l' or 'r'
3580   local outer = strong
3581
3582   local new_dir = false
3583   local first_dir = false
3584
3585   local last_lr
3586
3587   local type_n = ''
3588
3589   for item in node.traverse(head) do
3590
3591     -- three cases: glyph, dir, otherwise
3592     if item.id == node.id'glyph' then
3593
3594       local chardata = characters[item.char]
3595       dir = chardata and chardata.d or nil
3596       if not dir then
3597         for nn, et in ipairs(ranges) do
3598           if item.char < et[1] then
3599             break
3600           elseif item.char <= et[2] then
3601             dir = et[3]
3602             break
3603           end
3604         end
3605       end
3606       dir = dir or 'l'

```

Next is based on the assumption babel sets the language AND switches the script with its dir. We treat a language block as a separate Unicode sequence. The following piece of code is executed at the first glyph after a 'dir' node. We don't know the current language until then.

```

3607   if new_dir then
3608     attr_dir = 0
3609     for at in node.traverse(item.attr) do
3610       if at.number == luatexbase.registernumber'bbl@attr@dir' then
3611         attr_dir = at.value
3612       end
3613     end
3614     if attr_dir == 1 then
3615       strong = 'r'
3616     elseif attr_dir == 2 then
3617       strong = 'al'

```

```

3618     else
3619         strong = 'l'
3620     end
3621     strong_lr = (strong == 'l') and 'l' or 'r'
3622     outer = strong_lr
3623     new_dir = false
3624 end
3625
3626     if dir == 'nsm' then dir = strong end          -- W1

```

Numbers. The dual <al>/<r> system for R is somewhat cumbersome.

```

3627     dir_real = dir          -- We need dir_real to set strong below
3628     if dir == 'al' then dir = 'r' end -- W3

```

By W2, there are no <en> <et> <es> if strong == <al>, only <an>. Therefore, there are not <et en> nor <en et>, W5 can be ignored, and W6 applied:

```

3629     if strong == 'al' then
3630         if dir == 'en' then dir = 'an' end          -- W2
3631         if dir == 'et' or dir == 'es' then dir = 'on' end -- W6
3632         strong_lr = 'r'                             -- W3
3633     end

```

Once finished the basic setup for glyphs, consider the two other cases: dir node and the rest.

```

3634     elseif item.id == node.id'dir' then
3635         new_dir = true
3636         dir = nil
3637     else
3638         dir = nil          -- Not a char
3639     end

```

Numbers in R mode. A sequence of <en>, <et>, <an>, <es> and <cs> is typeset (with some rules) in L mode. We store the starting and ending points, and only when anything different is found (including nil, ie, a non-char), the textdir is set. This means you cannot insert, say, a whatsit, but this is what I would expect (with luacolor you may colorize some digits). Anyway, this behaviour could be changed with a switch in the future. Note in the first branch only <an> is relevant if <al>.

```

3640     if dir == 'en' or dir == 'an' or dir == 'et' then
3641         if dir ~= 'et' then
3642             type_n = dir
3643         end
3644         first_n = first_n or item
3645         last_n = last_es or item
3646         last_es = nil
3647     elseif dir == 'es' and last_n then -- W3+W6
3648         last_es = item
3649     elseif dir == 'cs' then          -- it's right - do nothing
3650     elseif first_n then -- & if dir = any but en, et, an, es, cs, inc nil
3651         if strong_lr == 'r' and type_n ~= '' then
3652             dir_mark(head, first_n, last_n, 'r')
3653         elseif strong_lr == 'l' and first_d and type_n == 'an' then
3654             dir_mark(head, first_n, last_n, 'r')
3655             dir_mark(head, first_d, last_d, outer)
3656             first_d, last_d = nil, nil
3657         elseif strong_lr == 'l' and type_n ~= '' then
3658             last_d = last_n
3659         end
3660         type_n = ''

```

```

3661     first_n, last_n = nil, nil
3662 end

```

R text in L, or L text in R. Order of dir_ mark's are relevant: d goes outside n, and therefore it's emitted after. See dir_mark to understand why (but is the nesting actually necessary or is a flat dir structure enough?). Only L, R (and AL) chars are taken into account – everything else, including spaces, whatsits, etc., are ignored:

```

3663 if dir == 'l' or dir == 'r' then
3664   if dir ~= outer then
3665     first_d = first_d or item
3666     last_d = item
3667   elseif first_d and dir ~= strong_lr then
3668     dir_mark(head, first_d, last_d, outer)
3669     first_d, last_d = nil, nil
3670   end
3671 end

```

Mirroring. Each chunk of text in a certain language is considered a “closed” sequence. If <r on r> and <l on l>, it's clearly <r> and <l>, resptly, but with other combinations depends on outer. From all these, we select only those resolving <on> → <r>. At the beginning (when last_lr is nil) of an R text, they are mirrored directly.

TODO - numbers in R mode are processed. It doesn't hurt, but should not be done.

```

3672 if dir and not last_lr and dir ~= 'l' and outer == 'r' then
3673   item.char = characters[item.char] and
3674     characters[item.char].m or item.char
3675 elseif (dir or new_dir) and last_lr ~= item then
3676   local mir = outer .. strong_lr .. (dir or outer)
3677   if mir == 'rrr' or mir == 'lrr' or mir == 'rrl' or mir == 'rlr' then
3678     for ch in node.traverse(node.next(last_lr)) do
3679       if ch == item then break end
3680       if ch.id == node.id'glyph' then
3681         ch.char = characters[ch.char].m or ch.char
3682       end
3683     end
3684   end
3685 end

```

Save some values for the next iteration. If the current node is 'dir', open a new sequence. Since dir could be changed, strong is set with its real value (dir_real).

```

3686 if dir == 'l' or dir == 'r' then
3687   last_lr = item
3688   strong = dir_real          -- Don't search back - best save now
3689   strong_lr = (strong == 'l') and 'l' or 'r'
3690 elseif new_dir then
3691   last_lr = nil
3692 end
3693 end

```

Mirror the last chars if they are no directed. And make sure any open block is closed, too.

```

3694 if last_lr and outer == 'r' then
3695   for ch in node.traverse_id(node.id'glyph', node.next(last_lr)) do
3696     ch.char = characters[ch.char].m or ch.char
3697   end
3698 end
3699 if first_n then
3700   dir_mark(head, first_n, last_n, outer)
3701 end
3702 if first_d then

```

```

3703   dir_mark(head, first_d, last_d, outer)
3704 end

```

In boxes, the dir node could be added before the original head, so the actual head is the previous node.

```

3705   return node.prev(head) or head
3706 end
3707 </basic-r>

```

14 The ‘nil’ language

This ‘language’ does nothing, except setting the hyphenation patterns to nohyphenation. For this language currently no special definitions are needed or available.

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

```

3708 <*nil>
3709 \ProvidesLanguage{nil}[<<date>> <<version>> Nil language]
3710 \LdfInit{nil}{datenil}

```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, nil could be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known.

```

3711 \ifx\l@nohyphenation\@undefined
3712   \@nopatterns{nil}
3713   \adddialect\l@nil0
3714 \else
3715   \let\l@nil\l@nohyphenation
3716 \fi

```

This macro is used to store the values of the hyphenation parameters `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin`.

```

3717 \providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\m@ne\m@ne}

```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the ‘nil’ language.

```

\captionnil
\datenil
3718 \let\captionnil\@empty
3719 \let\datenil\@empty

```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```

3720 \ldf@finish{nil}
3721 </nil>

```

15 Support for Plain T_EX (plain.def)

15.1 Not renaming hyphen.tex

As Don Knuth has declared that the filename `hyphen.tex` may only be used to designate *his* version of the american English hyphenation patterns, a new solution has to be found in order to be able to load hyphenation patterns for other languages in a plain-based T_EX-format. When asked he responded:

That file name is “sacred”, and if anybody changes it they will cause severe upward/downward compatibility headaches.

People can have a file `localhyphen.tex` or whatever they like, but they mustn’t diddle with `hyphen.tex` (or `plain.tex` except to preload additional fonts).

The files `bplain.tex` and `lplain.tex` can be used as replacement wrappers around `plain.tex` and `lplain.tex` to achieve the desired effect, based on the `babel` package. If you load each of them with \LaTeX , you will get a file called either `bplain.fmt` or `lplain.fmt`, which you can use as replacements for `plain.fmt` and `lplain.fmt`. As these files are going to be read as the first thing \LaTeX sees, we need to set some category codes just to be able to change the definition of `\input`

```
3722 <*bplain | bplain>
3723 \catcode`\{=1 % left brace is begin-group character
3724 \catcode`\}=2 % right brace is end-group character
3725 \catcode`\#=6 % hash mark is macro parameter character
```

Now let's see if a file called `hyphen.cfg` can be found somewhere on \LaTeX 's input path by trying to open it for reading...

```
3726 \openin 0 hyphen.cfg
```

If the file wasn't found the following test turns out true.

```
3727 \ifeof0
3728 \else
```

When `hyphen.cfg` could be opened we make sure that *it* will be read instead of the file `hyphen.tex` which should (according to Don Knuth's ruling) contain the american English hyphenation patterns and nothing else.

We do this by first saving the original meaning of `\input` (and I use a one letter control sequence for that so as not to waste multi-letter control sequence on this in the format).

```
3729 \let\input
```

Then `\input` is defined to forget about its argument and load `hyphen.cfg` instead.

```
3730 \def\input #1 {%
3731   \let\input\input
3732   \input hyphen.cfg
```

Once that's done the original meaning of `\input` can be restored and the definition of `\input` can be forgotten.

```
3733   \let\input\input
3734 }
3735 \fi
3736 </bplain | lplain>
```

Now that we have made sure that `hyphen.cfg` will be loaded at the right moment it is time to load `plain.tex`.

```
3737 <bplain>\input plain.tex
3738 <lplain>\input lplain.tex
```

Finally we change the contents of `\fmtname` to indicate that this is *not* the plain format, but a format based on plain with the `babel` package preloaded.

```
3739 <bplain>\def\fmtname{babel-plain}
3740 <lplain>\def\fmtname{babel-lplain}
```

When you are using a different format, based on `plain.tex` you can make a copy of `bplain.tex`, rename it and replace `plain.tex` with the name of your format file.

15.2 Emulating some \LaTeX features

The following code duplicates or emulates parts of $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ that are needed for `babel`.

```
3741 <*plain>
3742 \def\@empty{}
3743 \def\loadlocalcfg#1{%
```

```

3744 \openin0#1.cfg
3745 \ifeof0
3746 \closein0
3747 \else
3748 \closein0
3749 {\immediate\write16{*****}%
3750 \immediate\write16{* Local config file #1.cfg used}%
3751 \immediate\write16{*}%
3752 }
3753 \input #1.cfg\relax
3754 \fi
3755 \@endoflfd}

```

15.3 General tools

A number of \LaTeX macro's that are needed later on.

```

3756 \long\def\@firstofone#1{#1}
3757 \long\def\@firstoftwo#1#2{#1}
3758 \long\def\@secondoftwo#1#2{#2}
3759 \def\@nnil{\@nil}
3760 \def\@gobbletwo#1#2{}
3761 \def\@ifstar#1{\@ifnextchar *{\@firstoftwo{#1}}}
3762 \def\@star@or@long#1{%
3763 \@ifstar
3764 {\let\l@ngrel@x\relax#1}%
3765 {\let\l@ngrel@x\long#1}}
3766 \let\l@ngrel@x\relax
3767 \def\@car#1#2\@nil{#1}
3768 \def\@cdr#1#2\@nil{#2}
3769 \let\@typeset@protect\relax
3770 \let\protected@edef\edef
3771 \long\def\@gobble#1{}
3772 \edef\@backslashchar{\expandafter\@gobble\string\}
3773 \def\strip@prefix#1>{}
3774 \def\g@addto@macro#1#2{ {%
3775 \toks@ \expandafter{#1#2}%
3776 \xdef#1{\the\toks@}}
3777 \def\@namedef#1{\expandafter\def\csname #1\endcsname}
3778 \def\@nameuse#1{\csname #1\endcsname}
3779 \def\@ifundefined#1{%
3780 \expandafter\ifx\csname#1\endcsname\relax
3781 \expandafter\@firstoftwo
3782 \else
3783 \expandafter\@secondoftwo
3784 \fi}
3785 \def\@expandtwoargs#1#2#3{%
3786 \edef\reserved@a{\noexpand#1{#2}{#3}}\reserved@a}
3787 \def\zap@space#1 #2{%
3788 #1%
3789 \ifx#2\@empty\else\expandafter\zap@space\fi
3790 #2}

```

$\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ has the command `\@onlypreamble` which adds commands to a list of commands that are no longer needed after `\begin{document}`.

```

3791 \ifx\@preamblecmds\@undefined
3792 \def\@preamblecmds{}
3793 \fi
3794 \def\@onlypreamble#1{%

```

```

3795 \expandafter\gdef\expandafter\@preamblecmds\expandafter{%
3796 \@preamblecmds\do#1}}
3797 \@onlypreamble\@onlypreamble

```

Mimick L^AT_EX's \AtBeginDocument; for this to work the user needs to add \begindocument to his file.

```

3798 \def\begindocument{%
3799 \@begindocumenthook
3800 \global\let\@begindocumenthook\@undefined
3801 \def\do#1{\global\let##1\@undefined}%
3802 \@preamblecmds
3803 \global\let\do\noexpand}

3804 \ifx\@begindocumenthook\@undefined
3805 \def\@begindocumenthook{}
3806 \fi
3807 \@onlypreamble\@begindocumenthook
3808 \def\AtBeginDocument{\g@addto@macro\@begindocumenthook}

```

We also have to mimick L^AT_EX's \AtEndOfPackage. Our replacement macro is much simpler; it stores its argument in \@endofldf.

```

3809 \def\AtEndOfPackage#1{\g@addto@macro\@endofldf{#1}}
3810 \@onlypreamble\AtEndOfPackage
3811 \def\@endofldf{}
3812 \@onlypreamble\@endofldf
3813 \let\bbl@afterlang\@empty
3814 \chardef\bbl@opt@hyphenmap\z@

```

L^AT_EX needs to be able to switch off writing to its auxiliary files; plain doesn't have them by default.

```

3815 \ifx\if@files\@undefined
3816 \expandafter\let\csname if@files\expandafter\endcsname
3817 \csname iffalse\endcsname
3818 \fi

```

Mimick L^AT_EX's commands to define control sequences.

```

3819 \def\newcommand{\@star@or@long\new@command}
3820 \def\new@command#1{%
3821 \@testopt{\@newcommand#1}0}
3822 \def\@newcommand#1[#2]{%
3823 \@ifnextchar [{\@xargdef#1[#2]}%
3824 {\@argdef#1[#2]}}
3825 \long\def\@argdef#1[#2]#3{%
3826 \@yargdef#1\@ne{#2}{#3}}
3827 \long\def\@xargdef#1[#2][#3]#4{%
3828 \expandafter\def\expandafter#1\expandafter{%
3829 \expandafter\@protected@testopt\expandafter #1%
3830 \csname\string#1\expandafter\endcsname{#3}}%
3831 \expandafter\@yargdef \csname\string#1\endcsname
3832 \tw@{#2}{#4}}
3833 \long\def\@yargdef#1#2#3{%
3834 \@tempcnta#3\relax
3835 \advance \@tempcnta \@ne
3836 \let\@hash@\relax
3837 \edef\reserved@a{\ifx#2\tw@ [\@hash@1]\fi}%
3838 \@tempcntb #2%
3839 \@whilenum\@tempcntb <\@tempcnta
3840 \do{%
3841 \edef\reserved@a{\reserved@a\@hash@the\@tempcntb}%

```

```

3842 \advance\@tempcntb \@ne}%
3843 \let\@hash@###%
3844 \l@ngrel@x\expandafter\def\expandafter#1\reserved@a}
3845 \def\providecommand{\@star@or@long\provide@command}
3846 \def\provide@command#1{%
3847 \begingroup
3848 \escapechar\m@ne\xdef\@gtempa{\string#1}%
3849 \endgroup
3850 \expandafter\@ifundefined\@gtempa
3851 {\def\reserved@a{\new@command#1}}%
3852 {\let\reserved@a\relax
3853 \def\reserved@a{\new@command\reserved@a}}%
3854 \reserved@a}%

3855 \def\DeclareRobustCommand{\@star@or@long\declare@robustcommand}
3856 \def\declare@robustcommand#1{%
3857 \edef\reserved@a{\string#1}%
3858 \def\reserved@b{#1}%
3859 \edef\reserved@b{\expandafter\strip@prefix\meaning\reserved@b}%
3860 \edef#1{%
3861 \ifx\reserved@a\reserved@b
3862 \noexpand\x@protect
3863 \noexpand#1%
3864 \fi
3865 \noexpand\protect
3866 \expandafter\noexpand\csname\bbl@stripslash#1 \endcsname
3867 }%
3868 \expandafter\new@command\csname\bbl@stripslash#1 \endcsname
3869 }
3870 \def\x@protect#1{%
3871 \ifx\protect\@typeset@protect\else
3872 \@x@protect#1%
3873 \fi
3874 }
3875 \def\@x@protect#1\fi#2#3{%
3876 \fi\protect#1%
3877 }

```

The following little macro `\in@` is taken from `latex.ltx`; it checks whether its first argument is part of its second argument. It uses the boolean `\in@`; allocating a new boolean inside conditionally executed code is not possible, hence the construct with the temporary definition of `\bbl@tempa`.

```

3878 \def\bbl@tempa{\csname newif\endcsname\ifin@}
3879 \ifx\in@\@undefined
3880 \def\in@#1#2{%
3881 \def\in@##1#1##2##3\in@{%
3882 \ifx\in@##2\in@false\else\in@true\fi}%
3883 \in@##2#1\in@\in@}
3884 \else
3885 \let\bbl@tempa\@empty
3886 \fi
3887 \bbl@tempa

```

\LaTeX has a macro to check whether a certain package was loaded with specific options. The command has two extra arguments which are code to be executed in either the true or false case. This is used to detect whether the document needs one of the accents to be activated (activegrave and activeacute). For plain \TeX we assume that the user wants them to be active by default. Therefore the only thing we do is execute the third argument (the code for the true case).

```
3888 \def\ifpackagewith#1#2#3#4{#3}
```

The \LaTeX macro `\ifl@aded` checks whether a file was loaded. This functionality is not needed for plain \TeX but we need the macro to be defined as a no-op.

```
3889 \def\ifl@aded#1#2#3#4{}
```

For the following code we need to make sure that the commands `\newcommand` and `\providecommand` exist with some sensible definition. They are not fully equivalent to their $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$ versions; just enough to make things work in plain \TeX environments.

```
3890 \ifx\@tempcnta\@undefined
3891   \csname newcount\endcsname\@tempcnta\relax
3892 \fi
3893 \ifx\@tempcntb\@undefined
3894   \csname newcount\endcsname\@tempcntb\relax
3895 \fi
```

To prevent wasting two counters in $\LaTeX 2.09$ (because counters with the same name are allocated later by it) we reset the counter that holds the next free counter (`\count10`).

```
3896 \ifx\bye\@undefined
3897   \advance\count10 by -2\relax
3898 \fi
3899 \ifx\@ifnextchar\@undefined
3900   \def\@ifnextchar#1#2#3{%
3901     \let\reserved@d=#1%
3902     \def\reserved@a{#2}\def\reserved@b{#3}%
3903     \futurelet\@let@token\@ifnch}
3904   \def\@ifnch{%
3905     \ifx\@let@token\@sptoken
3906       \let\reserved@c\@xifnch
3907     \else
3908       \ifx\@let@token\reserved@d
3909         \let\reserved@c\reserved@a
3910       \else
3911         \let\reserved@c\reserved@b
3912       \fi
3913     \fi
3914     \reserved@c}
3915   \def\:{\let\@sptoken= } \: % this makes \@sptoken a space token
3916   \def\:{\@xifnch} \expandafter\def\:{\futurelet\@let@token\@ifnch}
3917 \fi
3918 \def\@testopt#1#2{%
3919   \@ifnextchar[#{#1}{#1[#2]}}
3920 \def\@protected@testopt#1{%
3921   \ifx\protect\@typeset@protect
3922     \expandafter\@testopt
3923   \else
3924     \@x@protect#1%
3925   \fi}
3926 \long\def\@whilenum#1\do #2{\ifnum #1\relax #2\relax\@iwhilenum{#1\relax
3927   #2\relax}\fi}
3928 \long\def\@iwhilenum#1{\ifnum #1\expandafter\@iwhilenum
3929   \else\expandafter\@gobble\fi{#1}}
```

15.4 Encoding related macros

Code from `ltoutenc.dtx`, adapted for use in the plain \TeX environment.

```
3930 \def\DeclareTextCommand{%
3931   \@dec@text@cmd\providecommand
```

```

3932 }
3933 \def\ProvideTextCommand{%
3934   \@dec@text@cmd\providecommand
3935 }
3936 \def\DeclareTextSymbol#1#2#3{%
3937   \@dec@text@cmd\chardef#1{#2}#3\relax
3938 }
3939 \def\@dec@text@cmd#1#2#3{%
3940   \expandafter\def\expandafter#2%
3941     \expandafter{%
3942       \csname#3-cmd\expandafter\endcsname
3943       \expandafter#2%
3944       \csname#3\string#2\endcsname
3945     }%
3946 %   \let\@ifdefinable\@rc@ifdefinable
3947   \expandafter#1\csname#3\string#2\endcsname
3948 }
3949 \def\@current@cmd#1{%
3950   \ifx\protect\@typeset@protect\else
3951     \noexpand#1\expandafter\@gobble
3952   \fi
3953 }
3954 \def\@changed@cmd#1#2{%
3955   \ifx\protect\@typeset@protect
3956     \expandafter\ifx\csname\cf@encoding\string#1\endcsname\relax
3957       \expandafter\ifx\csname ?\string#1\endcsname\relax
3958         \expandafter\def\csname ?\string#1\endcsname{%
3959           \@changed@x@err{#1}%
3960         }%
3961       \fi
3962       \global\expandafter\let
3963         \csname\cf@encoding \string#1\expandafter\endcsname
3964         \csname ?\string#1\endcsname
3965       \fi
3966       \csname\cf@encoding\string#1%
3967         \expandafter\endcsname
3968     \else
3969       \noexpand#1%
3970     \fi
3971 }
3972 \def\@changed@x@err#1{%
3973   \errhelp{Your command will be ignored, type <return> to proceed}%
3974   \errmessage{Command \protect#1 undefined in encoding \cf@encoding}}
3975 \def\DeclareTextCommandDefault#1{%
3976   \DeclareTextCommand#1?%
3977 }
3978 \def\ProvideTextCommandDefault#1{%
3979   \ProvideTextCommand#1?%
3980 }
3981 \expandafter\let\csname OT1-cmd\endcsname\@current@cmd
3982 \expandafter\let\csname?-cmd\endcsname\@changed@cmd
3983 \def\DeclareTextAccent#1#2#3{%
3984   \DeclareTextCommand#1{#2}[1]{\accent#3 #1}
3985 }
3986 \def\DeclareTextCompositeCommand#1#2#3#4{%
3987   \expandafter\let\expandafter\reserved@a\csname#2\string#1\endcsname
3988   \edef\reserved@b{\string#1}%
3989   \edef\reserved@c{%
3990     \expandafter\@strip@args\meaning\reserved@a:-\@strip@args}%

```

```

3991 \ifx\reserved@b\reserved@c
3992 \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\ifx
3993 \expandafter\@car\reserved@a\relax\relax\@nil
3994 \@text@composite
3995 \else
3996 \edef\reserved@b##1{%
3997 \def\expandafter\noexpand
3998 \csname#2\string#1\endcsname####1{%
3999 \noexpand\@text@composite
4000 \expandafter\noexpand\csname#2\string#1\endcsname
4001 ####1\noexpand\@empty\noexpand\@text@composite
4002 {##1}%
4003 }%
4004 }%
4005 \expandafter\reserved@b\expandafter{\reserved@a{##1}}%
4006 \fi
4007 \expandafter\def\csname\expandafter\string\csname
4008 #2\endcsname\string#1-\string#3\endcsname{#4}
4009 \else
4010 \errhelp{Your command will be ignored, type <return> to proceed}%
4011 \errmessage{\string\DeclareTextCompositeCommand\space used on
4012 inappropriate command \protect#1}
4013 \fi
4014 }
4015 \def\@text@composite#1#2#3\@text@composite{%
4016 \expandafter\@text@composite@x
4017 \csname\string#1-\string#2\endcsname
4018 }
4019 \def\@text@composite@x#1#2{%
4020 \ifx#1\relax
4021 #2%
4022 \else
4023 #1%
4024 \fi
4025 }
4026 %
4027 \def\@strip@args#1:#2-#3\@strip@args{#2}
4028 \def\DeclareTextComposite#1#2#3#4{%
4029 \def\reserved@a{\DeclareTextCompositeCommand#1{#2}{#3}}%
4030 \bgroup
4031 \lcode`\@=#4%
4032 \lowercase{%
4033 \egroup
4034 \reserved@a @%
4035 }%
4036 }
4037 %
4038 \def\UseTextSymbol#1#2{%
4039 % \let\@curr@enc\cf@encoding
4040 % \@use@text@encoding{#1}%
4041 #2%
4042 % \@use@text@encoding\@curr@enc
4043 }
4044 \def\UseTextAccent#1#2#3{%
4045 % \let\@curr@enc\cf@encoding
4046 % \@use@text@encoding{#1}%
4047 #2{\@use@text@encoding\@curr@enc\selectfont#3}%
4048 % \@use@text@encoding\@curr@enc
4049 }

```

```

4050 \def\@use@text@encoding#1{%
4051 % \edef\font@encoding{#1}%
4052 % \xdef\font@name{%
4053 % \csname\curr@fontshape/\font@size\endcsname
4054 % }%
4055 % \pickup@font
4056 % \font@name
4057 % \@enc@update
4058 }
4059 \def\DeclareTextSymbolDefault#1#2{%
4060 \DeclareTextCommandDefault#1{\UseTextSymbol{#2}#1}%
4061 }
4062 \def\DeclareTextAccentDefault#1#2{%
4063 \DeclareTextCommandDefault#1{\UseTextAccent{#2}#1}%
4064 }
4065 \def\cf@encoding{OT1}

```

Currently we only use the $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$ method for accents for those that are known to be made active in *some* language definition file.

```

4066 \DeclareTextAccent{"}{OT1}{127}
4067 \DeclareTextAccent{'}{OT1}{19}
4068 \DeclareTextAccent{^}{OT1}{94}
4069 \DeclareTextAccent{`}{OT1}{18}
4070 \DeclareTextAccent{~}{OT1}{126}

```

The following control sequences are used in `babel.def` but are not defined for plain \TeX .

```

4071 \DeclareTextSymbol{\textquotedblleft}{OT1}{92}
4072 \DeclareTextSymbol{\textquotedblright}{OT1}{`"}
4073 \DeclareTextSymbol{\textquoteleft}{OT1}{``}
4074 \DeclareTextSymbol{\textquoteright}{OT1}{''}
4075 \DeclareTextSymbol{\i}{OT1}{16}
4076 \DeclareTextSymbol{\ss}{OT1}{25}

```

For a couple of languages we need the \LaTeX -control sequence `\scriptsize` to be available. Because plain \TeX doesn't have such a sophisticated font mechanism as \LaTeX has, we just \let it to `\sevenrm`.

```

4077 \ifx\scriptsize\@undefined
4078 \let\scriptsize\sevenrm
4079 \fi
4080 </plain>

```

16 Acknowledgements

I would like to thank all who volunteered as β -testers for their time. Michel Goossens supplied contributions for most of the other languages. Nico Poppelier helped polish the text of the documentation and supplied parts of the macros for the Dutch language. Paul Wackers and Werenfried Spit helped find and repair bugs. During the further development of the babel system I received much help from Bernd Raichle, for which I am grateful.

References

- [1] Huda Smitshuijzen Abifares, *Arabic Typography*, Saqi, 2001.
- [2] Donald E. Knuth, *The \TeX book*, Addison-Wesley, 1986.

- [3] Leslie Lamport, *LaTeX, A document preparation System*, Addison-Wesley, 1986.
- [4] K.F. Treebus. *Tekstwijzer, een gids voor het grafisch verwerken van tekst*. SDU Uitgeverij ('s-Gravenhage, 1988).
- [5] Hubert Partl, *German TeX*, *TUGboat* 9 (1988) #1, p. 70–72.
- [6] Leslie Lamport, in: *TeXhax Digest*, Volume 89, #13, 17 February 1989.
- [7] Johannes Braams, Victor Eijkhout and Nico Poppelier, *The development of national LaTeX styles*, *TUGboat* 10 (1989) #3, p. 401–406.
- [8] Yannis Haralambous, *Fonts & Encodings*, O'Reilly, 2007.
- [9] Joachim Schrod, *International LaTeX is ready to use*, *TUGboat* 11 (1990) #1, p. 87–90.
- [10] Apostolos Syropoulos, Antonis Tsolomitis and Nick Sofroniu, *Digital typography using LaTeX*, Springer, 2002, p. 301–373.